# **SEAT ALTEA FREETRACK** OWNER'S MANUAL

# Foreword

This Instruction manual and its corresponding supplements should be read carefully to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

Besides the regular care and maintenance of the vehicle, its correct handling will contribute to preserve its value.

**For safety reasons, note the information concerning accessories, modifications and parts change.**

If selling the vehicle, give all of the onboard documentation to the new owner as this should be kept with the vehicle.

# Contents


**Manual structure** ..... 5

**Content** ..... 6

**Safety First** ..... 7

Safe driving ..... 7
- Brief introduction ..... 7
- Proper sitting position for occupants ..... 10
- Pedal area ..... 16
- Stowing luggage ..... 17

Seat belts ..... 19
- Brief introduction ..... 19
- Why wear seat belts? ..... 21
- Seat belts ..... 24
- Belt tension devices ..... 28

Airbag system ..... 30
- Brief introduction ..... 30
- Front airbags ..... 34
- Side airbags* ..... 37
- Curtain airbags ..... 41
- Deactivating airbags* ..... 44

Child safety ..... 46
- Brief introduction ..... 46
- Child seats ..... 48
- Securing child seats ..... 51

**Operating instructions** ..... 55

Cockpit ..... 55
- Overview ..... 55
- Instruments ..... 57
- Digital display in the instrument panel ..... 60
- Instrument panel menus* ..... 66
- Warning lamps ..... 75

Steering wheel controls* ..... 85
- General information ..... 85
- Audio system ..... 85
- Radio navigation system ..... 89

Unlocking and locking ..... 93
- Central locking ..... 93
- Keys ..... 99
- Radio frequency remote control ..... 100
- Anti-theft alarm system* ..... 102
- Tailgate ..... 104
- Windows ..... 106
- Sliding/tilting roof* ..... 108

Lights and visibility ..... 111
- Lights ..... 111
- Interior lights ..... 119
- Visibility ..... 122
- Windscreen wipers ..... 123
- Mirrors ..... 127

Seats and stowage ..... 130
- The importance of correct seat adjustment ..... 130
- Head restraints ..... 131
- Front seats ..... 133
- Rear seat bench ..... 135
- Stowage compartments ..... 137
- Ashtrays*, cigarette lighter* and electrical sockets* ..... 146
- First-aid kit, warning triangle, fire extinguisher ..... 149
- Boot ..... 150

Heating, Ventilation and Air conditioning ..... 153
- Heating ..... 153
- Climatic* ..... 155
- 2C-Climatronic* ..... 159
- General notes ..... 163

Driving ..... 165
- Address ..... 165
- Safety ..... 166
- Ignition lock ..... 167
- Starting and stopping the engine ..... 168
- Manual gearbox ..... 171
- Automatic gearbox* / DSG automatic gearbox* ..... 172
- Handbrake ..... 176
- Parking aid acoustic system* ..... 178
- Cruise control system (CCS)* ..... 180

**Practical tips** ..... 185

Intelligent technology ..... 185
- Brakes ..... 185
- Anti-lock brake system and traction control M-ABS (ABS and TCS) ..... 186
- Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)* ..... 187

Driving and the environment ..... 192
- Running-in ..... 192
- Exhaust gasses purification system ..... 193
- Economical and ecological driving ..... 194
- Driving abroad ..... 196

Trailer towing ..... 197
Instructions to follow ..... 197
Ball coupling of towing bracket* ..... 198
Driving tips ..... 198
Fitting a towing bracket* ..... 199
Your vehicle maintenance and cleaning .... 201
General notes ..... 201
Vehicle exterior maintenance ..... 202
Vehicle interior maintenance ..... 208
Accessories, parts replacement and modifications ..... 210
Accessories and parts ..... 210
Technical modifications ..... 210
Roof aerial* ..... 211
Mobile telephones and radios ..... 211
Checking and refilling levels ..... 212
Refuelling ..... 212
Petrol ..... 213
Diesel ..... 214
Working in the engine compartment ..... 215
Engine oil ..... 218
Coolant ..... 222
Washer fluid and windscreen wiper blades .... 224
Brake fluid ..... 228
Battery ..... 229
Wheels and tyres ..... 232
Wheels ..... 232
If and when ..... 240
Tools, tyre repair kit and spare wheel ..... 240
Wheel change ..... 242
Tyre repair kit (Tyre-Mobility-System)* ..... 249
Fuses ..... 251
Bulb change ..... 255
Jump-starting ..... 264
Towing and tow-starting ..... 267

**Technical Data** ..... 271

General notes on the technical data ..... 271
Outstanding information ..... 271
Data on fuel consumption ..... 273
Towing a trailer ..... 274
Technical Data ..... 275
Checking fluid levels ..... 275
Diesel engine 2.0l 103 kW (140 bhp). Front-wheel drive ..... 276
Diesel engine 2.0l 125 kW (170 bhp). four-wheel drive ..... 277
Dimensions and capacities ..... 279

**Index** ..... 281

# Manual structure

## What you should know before reading the on-board manual

This manual contains a description of the **equipment** supplied with the vehicle at the time of press. Some of the equipment hereunder described will not be available until a later date, or is only available in certain markets.

**Because this is a general manual for the ALTEA FREETRACK, some of the equipment and functions that are described in this manual are not included in all types or variants of the model or model year; they may vary or be modified depending on the technical requirements and on the market; this is in no way deceptive advertising.**

The **illustrations** are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

The **direction indications** (left, right, front, rear) appearing in this manual refer to the normal forward working direction of the vehicle except when otherwise indicated.

The **equipment marked with an asterisk*** is supplied as standard on certain versions of the model only, it can be supplied as an option on some models, or else it is only on sale in certain countries.

® All registered marks are indicated with ®. Although the copyright symbol does not appear, it is a copyrighted mark.

▶ The section is continued on the following page.

■ This shows the **end of the section**.

**WARNING**

**Texts preceded by this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.**

**Caution**

Texts preceded by this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Texts preceded by this symbol refer to relevant points concerning environmental protection.

**Note**

Texts preceded by this symbol contain additional information. ■

# Content

This manual is structured to provide the information you need in an organised way. The content of this Manual is divided into **sections** which belong to **chapters** (e.g. “Air conditioning”). The entire manual is divided into five large parts which are:

## 1. Safety First

Information on the vehicle equipment relating to passive safety such as seat belts, airbags, seats, etc.

## 2. Controls and equipment

Information about the distribution of controls in the driver position of your vehicle, about the seat adjustment possibilities, about how to create a suitable climate in the passenger compartment, etc.

## 3. Practical tips

Advice relating to the driving, caring and maintenance of your vehicle and certain problems you can solve yourself.

## 4. Technical Data

Figures, values and the dimensions of your vehicle.

## 5. Alphabetic index

At the end of this manual there is a detailed alphabetical index, this will help you to rapidly find the information you require. ■

# Safety First

## Safe driving

## Brief introduction

### Dear SEAT Driver

*Safety first!*

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and consider for both your own safety and for your passengers safety.

**WARNING**

- **This manual contains important information concerning the driver's and passengers' handling of the vehicle. The other booklets in the on board manual also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the onboard documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.** ■

### Safety equipment

*The safety equipment is a part of the occupant protection system and can reduce the risk of injury in the event of accident.*

Never “put” your safety and the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the risk of injury. The following list includes most of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- three-point seat belts,
- belt tension limiters for the front and rear side seats,
- belt tension devices for the front seats,
- belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seat backrests,
- curtain airbags,
- crash-active front head restraints*,
- “ISOFIX” anchorage points for child seats in the rear side seats with the “ISOFIX” system,
- height-adjustable head restraints,
- head restraints with in-use position and non-use position,
- adjustable steering column.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of accidents. But this safety equipment cannot neither help you nor your passengers if you ▶

or they are sitting in an incorrect position or do not properly adjust or use this equipment.

Therefore, information is provided about why this equipment is so important, how it protects you, what you have to consider when using it and how you and your passengers can achieve the greatest possible benefit from the safety equipment fitted. This manual includes important warnings that you and your passengers should note in order to reduce the risk of injury.

**Safety is everyone's business!** ■

## Before every trip

*The driver bears the responsibility for his passengers and the operational worthiness of the vehicle.*

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- Ensure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals operate flawlessly.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.
- Securely restrain all parcels ⇒ page 17.
- Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors properly acoording to your size.
- Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the head restraints in the in-use position ⇒ page 14.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ⇒ page 46.
- Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ⇒ page 10.
- Fasten your safety belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ⇒ page 19. ■

## What affects driving safety?

*Driving safety is largely determined by your driving style and the personal behaviour of all occupants.*

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected by any circumstance, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ⇒ ⚠, for this reason:

- Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic around you, e.g. by passengers or telephone conversations.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).
- Observe traffic laws and speed limits. ▶

- Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.
- When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or are in tension.

**WARNING**

**When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases.** ■

# Proper sitting position for occupants

## Proper sitting position for driver

*The proper sitting position for the driver is important for a safe and relaxed driving.*

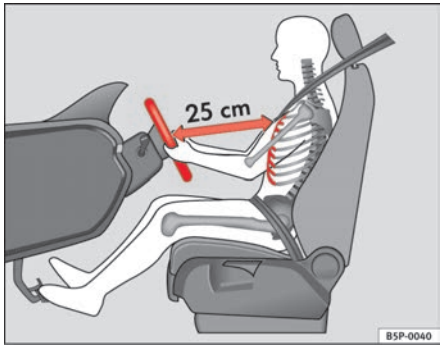


**Fig. 1 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel**

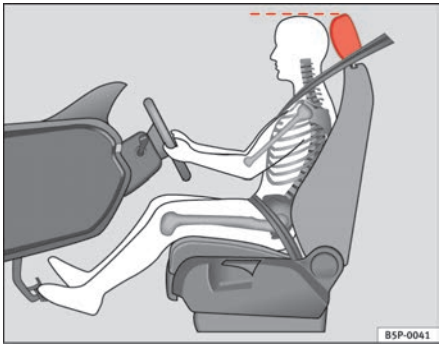


**Fig. 2 Proper head restraint position for driver**

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ⇒ fig. 1.
- Move the driver's seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ⇒ ⚠.
- Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ fig. 2.
- Move the backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your safety belt securely ⇒ page 19.

– Keep both feet in the foot well so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver's seat ⇒ page 130.

**WARNING**

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of the chest and the centre of the steering wheel ⇒ page 10, fig. 1. If you are sitting nearer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a qualified workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.** ■

## Proper sitting position for front passenger

*The front passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag can provide the greatest possible protection in the event that it is triggered.*

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ page 13.

– Keep both feet in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your safety belt securely ⇒ page 19.

It is possible to deactivate the passenger airbag in **exceptional circumstances** ⇒ page 25.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇒ page 133.

**WARNING**

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the dash panel. If you are sitting nearer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a qualified workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the instrument panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in events such sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly in order to achieve maximum protection.** ■

## Correct sitting position for passengers in the rear seats

*Passengers in the rear seats must sit up straight, keep their feet in the foot well s and wear their seat belts properly.*

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear bench seat must consider the following:

– Adjust the headrest to the correct position ⇒ page 14.

– Keep both feet in the foot well in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your safety belt securely ⇒ page 19.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ⇒ page 46.

**WARNING**

- **If the passengers on the rear seat are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly in order to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when backrests are in an upright position and the passengers are wearing their seat belts properly. If passengers on the rear seat are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web increases.** ■

## Correct adjustment of front seat head restraints

*Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passengers protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.*

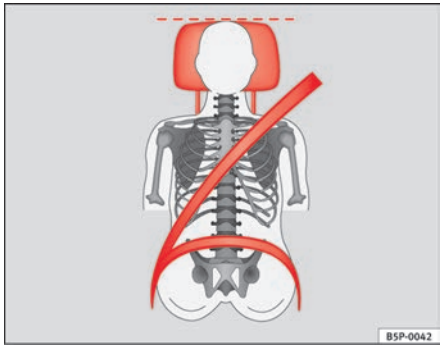


**Fig. 3 Properly adjusted head restraint viewed from the front**

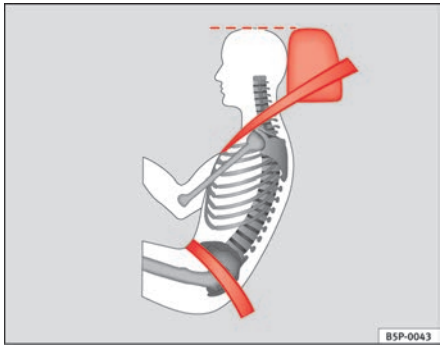


**Fig. 4 Properly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side**

Adjust the head restraint properly in order to achieve maximum protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, at the very least, at eye level ⇒ fig. 3 and ⇒ fig. 4.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒ page 130.

**WARNING**

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the passenger's height.** ■

## Headrests in use*

Vehicle occupants are pressed into their seats during a rear end collision. The resulting body pressure on the backrest activates the crash-active head restraint* on the front seat, which moves rapidly forwards and upwards at the same time. This movement reduces the distance between the occupant's head and the head rest, thus reducing the risk of head injuries such as brain trauma. ▶

**WARNING**

**Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**

- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the passenger's height.**

**Note**

The crash-active head restraints* could also be triggered if a vehicle occupant applies a high level of pressure on the backrest (e.g. by “falling” back into the seat when entering the vehicle) or if pressure is applied to a front seat head restraint from the rear. This accidental activation is, however, not dangerous as the crash-active head restraints will return to the original position immediately and are thus once again ready. ■

## Correct adjustment of rear seat head restraints

*Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of the occupant protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations*

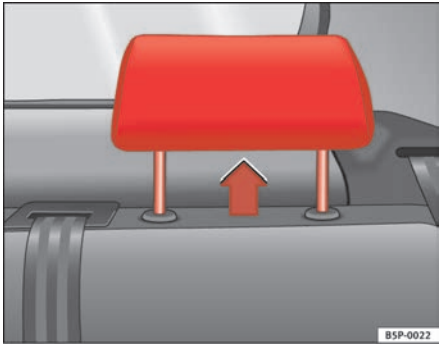


**Fig. 5 Head restraints in correct position**

**Fig. 6 Head restraint position warning label**

### Rear outer seat head restraints

– The rear outer seat head restraints have 3 positions.

– Two positions for **use** ⇒ page 14, fig. 5. In these positions, the head restraints are used normally, protecting passengers along with the rear seat belts.

– And one position for **non-use**.

– To fit the head restraints in position for use, pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow.

### Centre rear head restraint

– The centre head restraint only has two positions, **in-use** (head restraint up) and **non-use** (head restraint down).

**WARNING**

- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the head restraints are in the non-use position. See the warning label located on the rear side fixed window ⇒ page 14, fig. 6.**
- **Do not swap the centre rear head restraint with either of the outer seat rear head restraints.**
- **Injury risk in case of an accident!**

**Caution**

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints ⇒ page 131. ■

## Examples of incorrect sitting positions

*An incorrect sitting position can lead to severe injuries to occupants.*

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt web position. As the driver, you are responsible for all vehicle occupants, especially children.

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

**Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:**

- Never stand in the vehicle,
- never stand on the seats,
- never kneel on the seats,
- never tilt your backrest far to the rear,
- never lean against the dash panel,
- never lie on the rear bench,
- never sit on the front edge of a seat,
- never sit sideways,
- never lean out of a window,
- never put your feet out of a window,
- never put your feet on the dash panel,
- never put your feet on the surface of a seat,

- never travel in a foot well,
- never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt,
- never carry any person in the luggage compartment.

**WARNING**

- **Every incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the occupants to severe injuries if airbags trigger, by striking a passenger who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to assume the proper sitting position and to maintain it during the trip ⇒ page 10, "Proper sitting position for occupants".** ■

# Pedal area

## Pedals

*The operation of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.*

– Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.

– Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.

Use only floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened on the foot well.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be pressed down thoroughly in order to stop the vehicle.

**Wear suitable shoes**

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

**WARNING**

- **Restricting pedal operation can lead to critical situations while driving.**
- **Never place objects on the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!** ■

## Floor mats on the driver side

*Only floor mats may be used which can be securely fastened in the foot well and do not impair operation of the pedals.*

– Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a qualified dealership.

**WARNING**

- **If the pedals are obstructed, an accident may occur. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are always securely attached.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.** ■

# Stowing luggage

## Loading the boot

*All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.*

Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could impair the driving safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Lay and stow heavy luggage as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Stow heavy luggage as low as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Secure heavy objects to the fitted fastening rings ⇒ page 18.

**WARNING**

- **Loose luggage and other objects in the boot could cause serious injuries.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always stow objects in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings.**
- **Use suitable specialist straps to secure heavy objects.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants or passers-by. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects can be transformed into “missiles”. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the tailgate is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment closing the door behind them; they will remain trapped without help and there is a mortal risk.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the doors when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be properly belted in** **⇒ page 19.**

**Note**

- Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slits are never covered.
- Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available. ■

## Fastening rings*

*There can be four fastening rings in the boot for fastening luggage and other objects.*

– Always use suitable and undamaged straps to secure luggage and other objects to the fastening rings ⇒ ⚠ in “Loading the boot” on page 17.

– Pull up the fastening rings to attach the straps.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can build up so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

Example: An object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to about 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this “projectile” strikes an occupant as it flies through the passenger compartment. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag.

**WARNING**

- **If pieces of baggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged retaining cords, injuries could result in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.**
- **To prevent pieces of luggage or other objects from flying forward, always use appropriate retaining cords which are secured to the fastening rings.**
- **Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.** ■

# Seat belts

## Brief introduction

### Before driving: remember your seat belt!

*Wearing a seat belt properly can save your life!*

In this chapter you will learn the importance of wearing seat belts, how they work and how to properly fasten, adjust and wear them.

– Read and consider all the information as well as the warnings in this chapter.

**WARNING**

- **If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases.**
- **Properly worn seat belts can reduce severe injuries in case of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents. For safety reasons, you and your passengers must always wear the seat belts properly while the vehicle is moving.**
- **Pregnant women or people with physical disabilities must also use seat belts. Like all other passengers, these people can also sustain severe injuries if they are not wearing their seat belts properly.** ■

### Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** seats, two on the front part and three on the rear part. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

**WARNING**

- **More people than available seats must never be transported in your vehicle.**
- **Every passenger in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.** ■

### Seat belt warning lamp*

*The warning lamp acts as a reminder to the driver to fasten the seat belt.*

Before starting the vehicle:

– Fasten your safety belt securely.

– Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.

– Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight.

After the ignition has been switched on, the warning lamp on the instrument panel lights up[1] if the driver has not fastened his/her seat belt, and a warning signal* is heard if the vehicle is driven at more than 30 km/h for 90 seconds.

[1] Depending on the version of the model.

The warning lamp* is switched off if the driver seat belt is fastened while the ignition is switched on. ■

# Why wear seat belts?

## Physical principles of frontal collisions

*In the event of a frontal collision, a large amount of kinetic energy must be absorbed.*

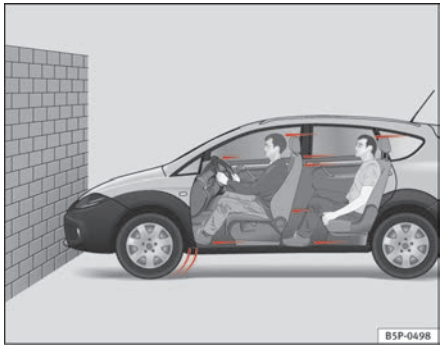


**Fig. 7 Vehicle about to hit a wall: the occupants are not wearing seat belts**

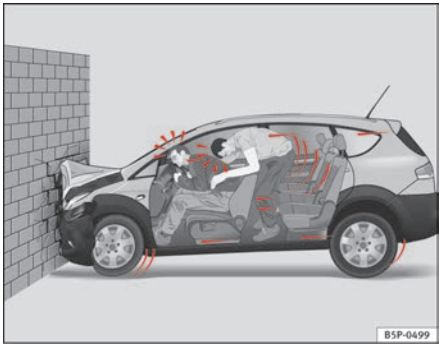


**Fig. 8 The vehicle hits the wall: the occupants are not wearing seat belts**

It is easy to explain how the laws of physics work in the case of a head-on collision: When a vehicle starts moving ⇒ fig. 7 there is a certain amount of energy known as “kinetic energy”, both in the vehicle and in the occupants.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and its passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “released” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h to 50 km/h, for example, the kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇒ fig. 8.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a frontal collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was ▶

travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to frontal accidents, but to all accidents and collisions. ■

## The danger of not using the seat belt

*The general belief that the passengers can protect themselves with their hands in a minor collision is false.*

**Fig. 9 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently.**

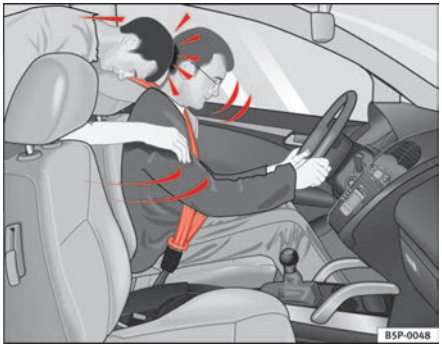


**Fig. 10 The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver wearing a seat belt.**

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ⇒ fig. 9.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When triggered, airbags provide only additional protection. All passengers (including the driver) must wear seat belts properly during the trip. This will reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat or not.

Note that airbags can be triggered only once. To achieve the best possible protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly so that you will be protected in accidents in which no airbag is deployed.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently in an accident. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ⇒ fig. 10. ■

## Seat belts protection

*Passengers not wearing seat belts risk severe injuries in the event of an accident.*

**Fig. 11 Driver wearing the seat belt properly: is secured by the belt in sharp braking**

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and substantially reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, properly worn seat belts reduce the danger of being thrown from the car.

Passengers wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. The front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the releasing kinetic energy and consequently, the risk of injury.

Our examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts substantially reduce the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown properly that wearing seat belts is an effective mean of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some frontal accidents. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off! ■

## Safety instructions on using seat belts

*If seat belts are used correctly, they can reduce the risk of injury in an accident.*

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this booklet.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

**WARNING**

- **If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. The other passengers must also wear the seat belt, otherwise they may be danger of injury!
- The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the belt web is not positioned correctly.
- Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.
- Keep both feet in the foot-well in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.
- Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.
- The belt webbing must never be twisted while it is being worn.
- The belt webbing should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts, reducing their capacity to protect.
- The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.
- Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.
- Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly ⇒ page 209. ■

# Seat belts

## Seat belt adjustment

*The seat belts for the front and rear occupants are locked into position by a latch.*

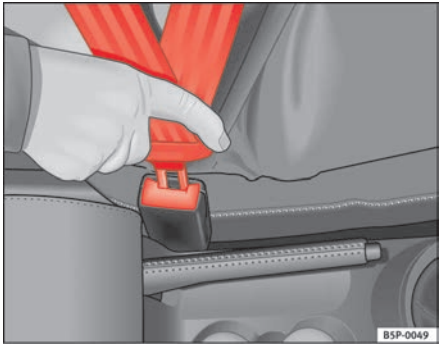


Fig. 12 Belt buckle and latch plate of seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the belt web is not positioned correctly.

– Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.

– To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ page 24, fig. 12.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with belt tension devices ⇒ page 28.

**WARNING**

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.**
- **If an occupant is incorrectly belted in, the belt cannot protect him or her properly. An incorrectly positioned belt web can cause extremely severe injuries.**
- **Always engage the retractor lock when you are securing a child seat in group 0, 0+ or 1 ⇒ page 46.** ■

## Seat belt position

*Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.*

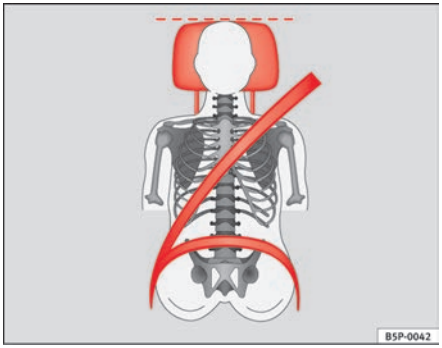


**Fig. 13 Correct belt web and head restraint positions, viewed from front**

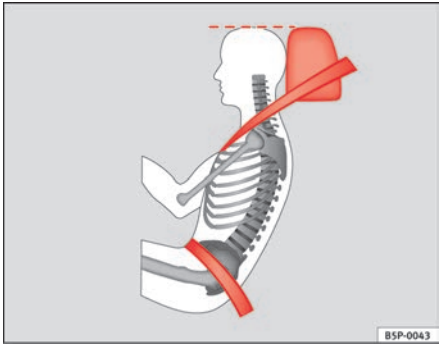


**Fig. 14 Correct belt web and head restraint positions, viewed from side**

The following features are available to adjust the seat belt in the shoulder region:

- belt height adjustment for the front seats.
- front seat height adjustment*.

**WARNING**

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the torso ⇒ page 25, fig. 13.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis ⇒ page 25, fig. 14. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 23.** ■

## Pregnant women must also fasten their seat belts properly

*The best protection for the unborn child is for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times during the pregnancy.*

**Fig. 15 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy**

The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the belt web is properly positioned ⇒ page 25.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ page 10.

– Holding the latch plate, pull the belt evenly across your chest and as low as possible over the pelvis ⇒ fig. 15.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the corresponding seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ ⚠.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle. ▶

**WARNING**

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 23.** ■

## Seat belt release

*The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill.*

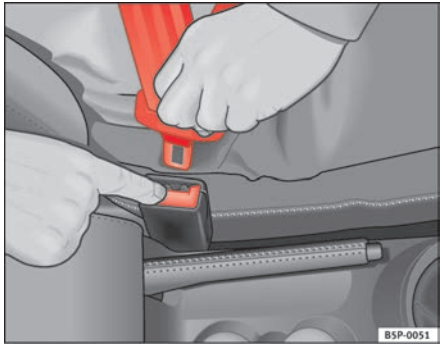


**Fig. 16 Removing latch plate from buckle**

– Press the red button on the belt buckle ⇒ fig. 16. The latch plate is released and springs out ⇒ ⚠.

– Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged.

**WARNING**

**Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries.** ■

## Adjusting the seat belt height

*Seat belt height adjusters can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt at the shoulder.*

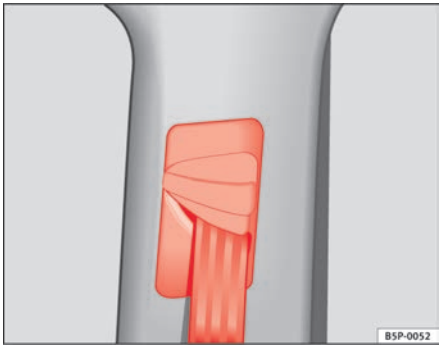


**Fig. 17 Location of the belt height adjuster**

The seat belt adjuster for the front seats can be used to adjust the proper belt position at the shoulder. ▶

– Press the upper part of the shoulder belt guide and hold it in this position ⇒ page 27, fig. 17.

– Move the shoulder belt guide up or down until you have adjusted the seat belt ⇒ page 25.

– After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely. ■

## Incorrectly fastened seat belts

*Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe injuries.*

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. The seat belts must be fastened exactly in the order described in this chapter. An incorrect sitting position impairs substantially the protection a seat belt offers and can lead to severe or fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. As driver, you are responsible for all vehicle occupants, especially children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Before every trip, instruct your passengers to adjust their seat belts properly and to wear them during the trip.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of seat belts ⇒ page 23.** ■

# Belt tension devices

## Function of the belt tension device

*During a frontal collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.*

The seat belts for the front occupants are equipped with belt tension devices. Sensors will only trigger the belt tension devices during severe head-on, lateral and rear collisions, and only if the seat belt is actually being worn. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The belt tension device can be triggered only once.

The belt tension devices will not be triggered in the event of a light frontal, side or rear collision, if the vehicle overturns, or in situations where no large forces act on the front, side or rear of the vehicle.

**Note**

- If the belt tension devices are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you. ■

## Service and disposal of belt tension devices

The belt tension devices are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tension devices or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat ▶

belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tension devices function incorrectly or not at all.

So that the effectiveness of the belt tension device is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the qualified workshops, must be observed.

**WARNING**

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the belt tension devices are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. The belt tension devices may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tension devices or seat belts.**
- **The belt tension device and seat belt including its automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tension devices and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a qualified workshop only.**
- **The belt tension devices will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed it they have been activated.** ■

# Airbag system

## Brief introduction

### Why wear a seat belt and assume the correct sitting position?

*For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.*

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, please ensure the following before driving:

- Always wear the seat belt properly ⇒ page 19.
- Adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel correctly ⇒ page 10.
- Adjust the front passenger seat correctly ⇒ page 11.
- Adjust the head restraint correctly ⇒ page 13.
- Use the correct child restraint system to protect children in your vehicle ⇒ page 46.

The airbag is deployed at high speed in fractions of a second. If you have an incorrect seating position at the time the airbag is deployed, it could cause you critical injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all passengers in the vehicle assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

A sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors that will trigger an airbag are: the type of accident, the angle of collision and the speed of the vehicle.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbag will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, for whatever reason, is not an indication as to why the airbags had been triggered.

**WARNING**

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. You should always transport all children up to 12 years of age on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly ⇒ page 19.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always properly adjust the front seats.** ■

## The danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat

*Rear-facing child seats must never be used on the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is enabled.*

An enabled front airbag on the front passenger side is potentially a major danger to a child. The front passenger seat is life threatening to a child if he/she is transported in a rear-facing child seat. You should always transport all children up to 12 years of age on the rear seat.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating airbag can strike it with such great force that critical or fatal injuries may result.

Therefore we strongly recommend you to transport children on the rear seats. That is the safest place for children in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ⇒ page 44. When transporting children, use a child seat appropriate to the age and size of each child ⇒ page 46.

For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to turn the airbag off, an Authorised Service Centre must be consulted.

**WARNING**

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **Never secure a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is enabled. The child can suffer critical or fatal injuries when the front passenger airbag is triggered.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and hurl it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **If, under special circumstances, it is necessary to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential that you observe the following safety measures:**
  - **Disable the front passenger airbag ⇒ page 44, “Deactivating airbags*”.**
  - **The child seat must be approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front or side airbag.**
  - **Follow the installation instructions given by the child seat manufacturer and observe the safety instructions ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.**
  - **Before properly installing the child seat, push the front passenger seat completely backwards so that the greatest possible distance to the front passenger airbag is ensured.**
  - **Ensure that no objects prevent the front passenger seat from being pushed completely back.**
  - **The backrest of the front passenger seat must be in an upright position.** ■

## Warning lamp for airbag and belt tension device system

*This warning lamp monitors the airbag and belt tension device system.*

The warning lamp monitors all airbags and belt tension devices in the vehicle, including control units and wiring connections.

**Monitoring of airbag and belt tension device system**

Both the airbag and belt tension device systems operation is constantly monitored electronically. Each time the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp lights for several seconds and the display in the instrument panel* shows **AIRBAG / TENSIONER**.

**The system must be checked when the warning lamp :**

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- after the ignition is switched on, it turns off after 4 seconds,
- it turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on,
- lights up or flashes while the car is moving.

In the event of a malfunction, the warning lamp remains on continuously. In addition, depending on the malfunction, a fault message appears in the display of the combi-instrument for approx. 10 seconds and a short acoustic signal is given. In this event, you should have a qualified workshop check the system immediately.

If any of the airbags are de-activated by the Authorised Service Centre, the indicator lights for several seconds more after the verification and will turn off if there is no fault.

**WARNING**

- **If there is a malfunction, the airbag and belt tension device system cannot properly perform its protective function.**
- **If a malfunction occured, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the airbag system and belt tension devices may not be triggered, or may not be triggered correctly.** ■

## Repairs, maintenance and disposal of the airbags

The parts of the airbag system are installed in various places in your vehicle. If you work on the airbag system or remove and fit parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag are **scrapped**. The specialist workshops and the Vehicle disposal centres are familiar with these requirements.

**WARNING**

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the airbags are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries is increased. The airbags may fail to inflate, or could inflate in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the passenger side of the dashboard, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way.**
- **It is important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **To clean the steering wheel or dash panel, you may use only a dry or a water-moistened cloth. Never clean the dash panel and the airbag module surface with cleansers containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag triggered, disintegrating plastic parts could cause substantial injuries.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the airbag system.**
- **Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel) should be performed only by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, repair information and qualified personnel.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **We strongly recommend you to go to a qualified workshop for all work on the airbag system.**
- **Never attempt to alter the front bumper or the body.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.** ■

# Front airbags

## Description of front airbags

*The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.*

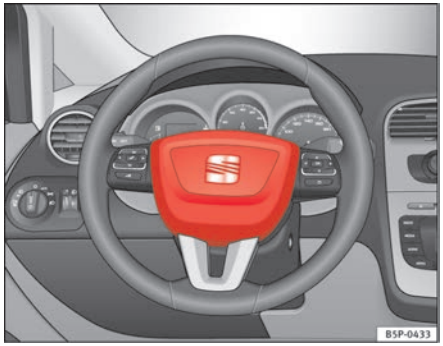


**Fig. 18 Driver airbag located in steering wheel**

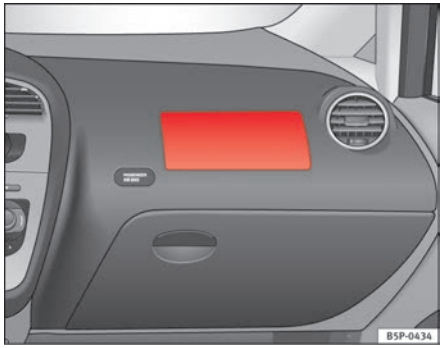


**Fig. 19 Front passenger airbag located in dash panel**

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 18 and the airbag for the front passenger is located in the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 19. Airbags are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇒ page 37, “Safety notes on the frontal airbag system”.

In addition to their normal function of restraining the occupants, the seat belts also hold the driver and front passenger in a position where the airbags can provide maximum protection in a frontal collision.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 19, “Brief introduction”.

**The main parts of the front airbag system are:**

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the two front airbags (airbag with gas generator) for the driver and front passenger,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 31.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag warning lamp will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

**There is a fault in the system if the warning lamp**

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ page 31,
- after the ignition is switched on, it turns off after 4 seconds,
- it turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on,
- lights up or flashes while the car is moving.

**The front airbag system will not be triggered if:**

- the ignition is switched off,
- there is a minor frontal collision,
- there is a side collision,
- there is a rear-end collision,
- the vehicle turns over.

**WARNING**

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 10, "Proper sitting position for occupants".**
- **If a fault has occured in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, during a frontal collision the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

## Operation of frontal airbags

*Inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.*

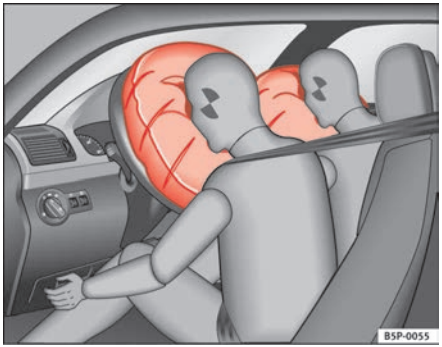


**Fig. 20 Inflated front airbags**

The airbag system is designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger are triggered in a severe frontal collision.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and deploy in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ fig. 20. The fully deployed airbags cushion the forward movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently for the front occupants to see forward.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within thousandth of a second). A fine dust ▶

may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle. ■

## Airbag covers when the frontal airbags are triggered

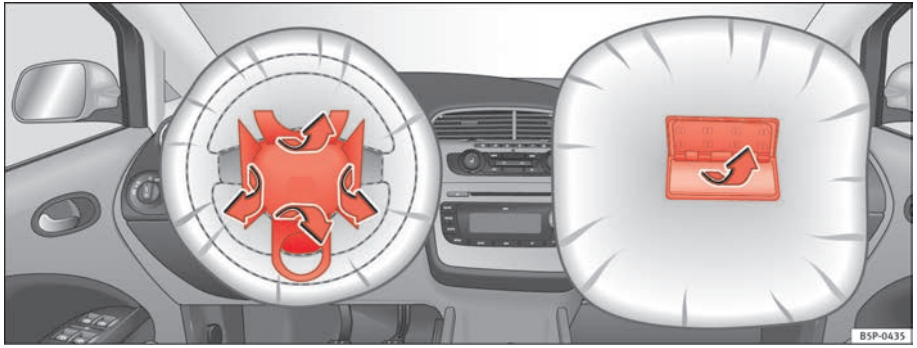


**Fig. 21 Airbag covers reacting when the front airbags are triggered**

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel and dash panel when the driver and front passenger airbags deploy ⇒ fig. 21. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel. ■

## Safety notes on the frontal airbag system

*If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.*

**WARNING**

- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. If the minimum distance is not observed then the airbags do not correctly protect the vehicle occupants; risk of fatal injuries! In addition, the front seats and head restraints must always be positioned correctly for the height of the occupant.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Never let a child travel on the front seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, children can sustain serious or fatal injuries from the airbag as it inflates ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.**
- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.** ■

# Side airbags*

## Description of side airbags

*The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.*

**Fig. 22 Side airbag in driver seat**

The front side airbags are located in the driver seat and front passenger seat backrests ⇒ fig. 22. The rear side airbags are located in the rear wheel housing lining. The locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG” in the upper region of the backrests and in the rear wheel housing lining.

Together with the seat belts, the side airbag system gives the front seat occupants additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 40, “Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system”.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers on the front seats to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also ▶

hold the passengers on the front seats and the outer rear seats in a position where the side airbags can provide maximum protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 19, “Brief introduction”.

**The side airbag system will not be triggered if:**

- the ignition is switched off,
- there is a minor side collision,
- there is a frontal collision,
- there is a rear-end collision,
- the vehicle turns over.

**The main parts of the airbag system are:**

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- The front side airbags in the backrests of the front seats and the rear side airbags in the lining of the rear wheel housing.
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 31.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag warning lamp will light up for approx. 4 seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

**WARNING**

- **In a side-on collision, the side airbags will not work, if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the interior panels have been removed.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been correctly closed.**
- **Always check that the openings are closed or covered if loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted in the interior door panels.**
- **Any work carried out to the doors should be made in a qualified authorised workshop.**
- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 10, “Proper sitting position for occupants”.**
- **If a fault has occured in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, during a side collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

## Function of side airbags

*Inflated airbags can reduce the risk of head or chest injury in many side impact collisions.*

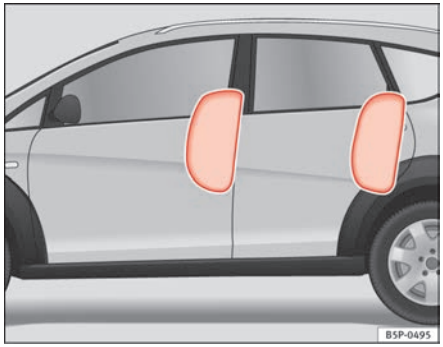


**Fig. 23 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle**

In some **side collisions** the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 23.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within thousandth of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the occupants of the front seats and the outer rear seats and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

## Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system

*If airbags are used correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in side impact collisions.*

**WARNING**

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.
- In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.
- Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.
- Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over the driver seat or front passenger seat unless the covers have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag is triggered from the side of the backrest, the use of non-approved seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness ⇒ page 210, “Accessories, parts replacement and modifications”.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.

**WARNING (continued)**

- When children assume an incorrect sitting position, they expose themselves to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; this could have critical consequences including serious injury or death ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.
- Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a qualified workshop. ■

# Curtain airbags

## Description of curtain airbags

*The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.*

Fig. 24 Location of left curtain airbag

The curtain airbags are located on both sides in the interior above the doors ⇒ fig. 24 and are identified with the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the curtain airbag system gives the occupants additional protection for the head and upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 42, “Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system”.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 19, “Brief introduction”.

**The main parts of the curtain airbag system are:**

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the curtain airbags (airbags with gas generator) for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the rear seats,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 31.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically.

**The curtain airbag system will not be triggered**

- the ignition is switched off,

- there is a frontal collision,
- there is a rear-end collision,
- if the vehicle rolls,
- during a minor side collision,

**WARNING**

**If a fault has occured in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

## Function of curtain airbags

*Fully inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury in a side collision.*

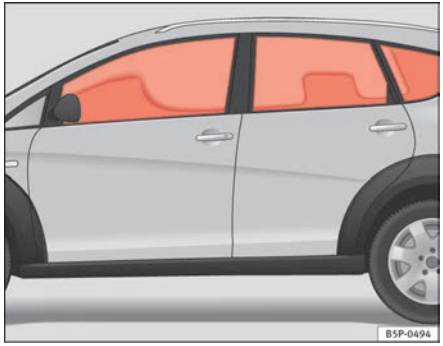


**Fig. 25 Deployed curtain airbags**

During some **side collisions** the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 25.

In certain types of accident the front, side and curtain airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas. In the process, the curtain bag covers the side windows and door pillars.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within thousandth of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

## Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system

*If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.*

**WARNING**

- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the head air bag must be disconnected in those vehicles fitted with a passenger compartment separation screen. See an Authorised Service Centre to make this adjustment.**

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

- There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the curtain airbags so that the curtain airbag can deploy without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows ⇒ page 210, “Accessories, parts replacement and modifications”.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.
- The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.
- Any work on the curtain airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a qualified workshop. ■

# Deactivating airbags*

## Disabling front passenger airbag

*If you fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be de-activated.*

Fig. 26 In the glovebox: key for enabling and disabling front passenger airbag

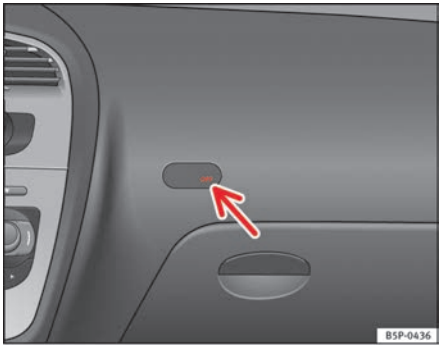


Fig. 27 Warning lamp for deactivated passenger airbag in centre console

When the passenger airbag is **deactivated**, this means that only the frontal airbag is deactivated. All the other airbags in the vehicle remain functional.

### Disabling front passenger airbag

– Switch the ignition on.

– Turn the ignition switch in the key operated switch in the glove box to the position **OFF** ⇒ fig. 26.

– Check that the warning lamp “OFF” on the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 27 remains lit when the ignition is switched on ⇒ ⚠.

### Enabling front passenger airbag

– Switch the ignition on.

– Turn the ignition switch in the key-operated switch in the glove box to the position **ON** ⇒ fig. 26.

– Check that the warning lamp on the instrument panel does ⇒ page 44, fig. 27 *not* light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the key-operated switch.**
- **You should deactivate the front passenger airbag only if you have to use a rear-facing child seat in exceptional cases. ⇒ page 46, "Child safety".**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary in exceptional circumstances to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, you must always disable the front passenger airbag.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger seat, enable the front passenger airbag again.**
- **Only deactivate the passenger airbag when the ignition is off, otherwise a fault may occur in the airbag system, this will create a danger that in case of an accident, the airbag does not deploy properly or does not deploy at all.**
- **When the passenger airbag is deactivated, if the warning lamp AIRBAG OFF is not continuously lit up when the front passenger airbag is disabled, there may be a fault in the airbag system:**
  - **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by a qualified workshop.**
  - **Do not use a child seat on the front passenger seat! The front passenger airbag could be triggered despite the fact that there is a fault in the system and, as a result, a child could sustain serious or fatal injuries.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

  - **It is predictable whether the front passenger airbag will deploy during an accident! Warn all your passengers of this.**
- **When using the ignition key to activate / deactivate the passenger front airbag, only the passenger front airbag will be activated / deactivated. The side airbag and head airbag on the passenger side will remain active.** ■

# Child safety

## Brief introduction

### Introduction

*Statistics show that children are generally safer on the rear seat than on the front passenger seat.*

We recommend that children under 12 years of age are transported on the rear seats. Children travelling on the rear seat must use a child restraint system or the seat belts provided, depending on their age, height and weight. For safety reasons, the child restraint system should be installed in the centre of the rear seat or behind the front passenger's seat.

The physical laws involved and the forces acting in a collision apply also to children. ⇒ page 21, “Why wear seat belts?”. But unlike adults, children do not have muscle and bone structures fully developed. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce this risk, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Genuine Accessories Program, which includes systems for all ages made by “Peke”[2].

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44. regulation.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note ⇒ page 47, “Safety notes on using child seats”.

We recommend you to include together with the on-board documentation, the manufacturer's Child Seat instructions manual. ■

[2] Not for all countries.

## Safety notes on using child seats

*Proper use of child seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!*

As the driver, you are responsible for any children you transport in your vehicle.

– Protect your children by properly using appropriate child seats ⇒ page 48.

– Always ensure that the belt webbing is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat.

– When travelling, do not allow children to distract you from traffic.

– Take breaks regularly during long trips. Take a break at least every two hours.

**WARNING**

- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This could lead to a risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must always be disabled ⇒ page 44, "Deactivating airbags*". If the passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest position.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to turn the airbag off, an Authorised Service Centre must be consulted.**
- **All passengers, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other passengers.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the car is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury in the event of sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly important if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; as this could cause serious injury or even death.**
- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave an unsupervised child alone on a child seat or in the vehicle.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child restraint system, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Do not allow the belt webbing to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause injuries even in a minor collision or in sudden braking manoeuvres.**
- **The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the belt web is properly positioned ⇒ page 24, "Seat belts".**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat ⇒ page 48, "Child seats".** ■

# Child seats

## Categorisation of child seats into groups

*Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.*

Child seats are subject to the regulation ECE-R 44. ECE-R. It means that: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

**Group 0**: Children up to 10 kg

**Group 0+**: Children up to 13 kg

**Group 1**: from 9 to 18 kg

**Group 2**: from 15 to 25 kg

**Group 3**: from 22 to 36 kg

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R 44 standard bear the test mark on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it). ■

## Group 0 and 0+ child seats

*A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help you to protect your child.*

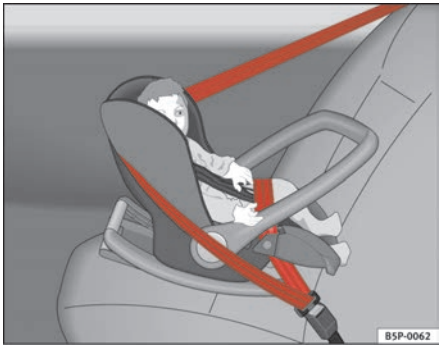


**Fig. 28 A group 0 rear-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat.**

**Group 0:** For babies from about 9 months old and 10 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration ⇒ fig. 28.

**Group 0+:** For babies from about 18 months old and 13 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to include together with the on-board documentation, the manufacturer's Child Seat instructions manual.

**WARNING**

**Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47.** ■

## Group 1 child seats

*A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help you to protect your child.*

**Fig. 29 A category 1 forward-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat.**

Child seats using the "ISOFIX" system or seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are most appropriate for babies and small children weighing between 9 and 18 kg.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to include together with the on-board documentation, the manufacturer's Child Seat instructions manual.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47.** ■

## Group 2 and 3 child seats

*A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help you to protect your child.*

**Fig. 30 Forward-facing child seat installed on rear seat.**

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to include together with the on-board documentation, the manufacturer's Child Seat instructions manual.

### Group 2 child seats

Children *under* 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg are best protected by group 2 child seats together with properly adjusted seat belts.

### Group 3 child seats

Children *over* 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg but less than 1.5 metres tall are best protected by seat cushions with head restraints together with properly worn seat belts ⇒ fig. 30.

**WARNING**

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie approximately on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm. The seat belt must lie close to the upper part of the body. The lap belt part must lie across the pelvis, not across the stomach, and always fit closely. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack ⇒ page 24, “Seat belts”.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety notes on using child seats” on page 47.** ■

# Securing child seats

## Ways to secure a child seat

*A child seat can be secured differently on the rear seat and on the front passenger seat.*

You can secure a child seat to the rear seat or front passenger seat in the following ways:

- Child seats in groups **0 to 3** can be secured with a seat belt.
- Group **0, 0+ and 1** child seats with the "ISOFIX" system can be secured to the "ISOFIX" retaining rings. In this case, seat belts are not necessary.

| Category | Weight | Seat locations | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Front passenger | Rear outer | Rear centre |
| Group 0 | ‹10 kg | U* | U/L | U |
| Group 0+ | ‹13 kg | U* | U/L | U |
| Group 1 | 9-18 kg | U* | U/L | U |
| Group 2 / 3 | 15-36 kg | U* | U | U |

U: Suitable for universal approved restraining systems for use in this age category (universal retention systems are those fitted using the adult seat belt).

*: Move the passenger seat as far to rear as possible, as high as possible and always deactivate the airbag.

L: Suitable for retention systems using the "ISOFIX" anchors

**WARNING**

- **When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This could cause fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must always be disabled ⇒ page 44, "Deactivating airbags*" and move the seat to its highest position, in case it has this adjustment.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47.** ■

## Securing child seat with the "ISOFIX" system

*The child seat with "ISOFIX" system can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats using the system*

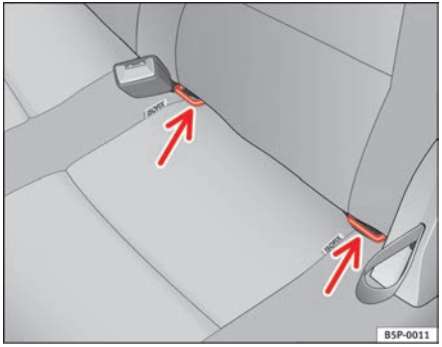


Fig. 31 ISOFIX securing rings

When removing or fitting the child seat, please be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.

– Move the seat as far to rear as it will go.

– Press the child seat onto the “ISOFIX” retaining rings until the child seat can be heard to engage securely.

– Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

**Two** “ISOFIX” retaining rings are fitted on each rear seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor. The access to “ISOFIX” rings is between the rear back rest and the seat.

Child seats with “ISOFIX” mountings are available in your Authorised Service Centres.

**WARNING**

- **The retaining rings are designed only for use with “ISOFIX” child seats.**
- **Never secure child seats without the “ISOFIX” system, retaining belts or objects to the fastening rings – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.**
- **Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly to the “ISOFIX” anchors.** ■

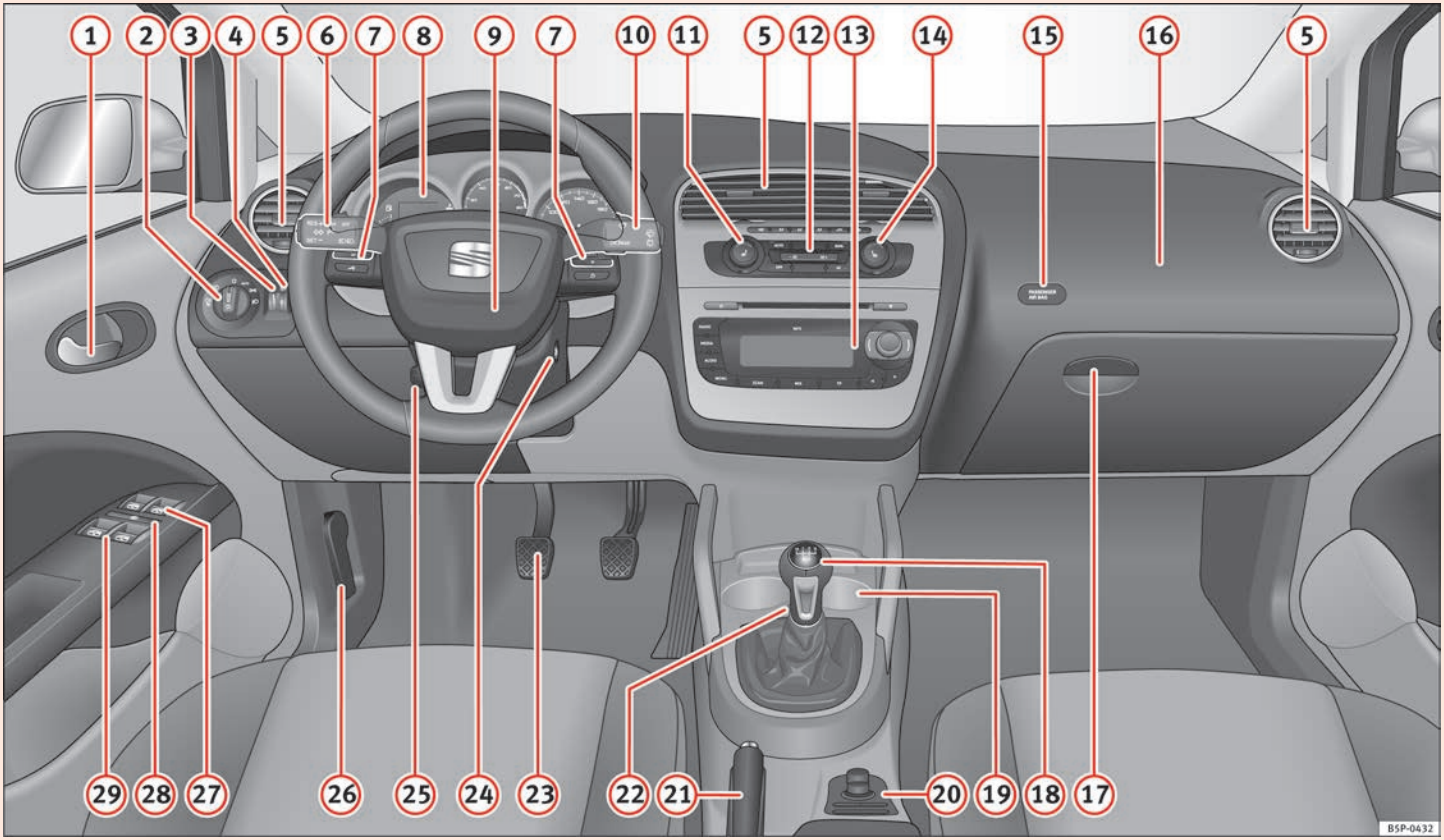


Fig. 32 Instrument panel

# Operating instructions

## Cockpit

## Overview

### Overview of the instrument panel

*This overview will help you to familiarise yourself with the controls and displays.*


1 Door release lever
2 Light switch ..... 111
3 Lighting control for instrument and control lighting ..... 115
4 Headlight range control ..... 115
5 Air vent
6 Turn signal and main beam lever and cruise control system* . 118, 180
7 Instrument panel:
– Instruments ..... 57
– Display ..... 60
– Indication lamps ..... 75
8 Horn (works only when the ignition is on)/ and driver front airbag ..... 30
9 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever and operation of the multi-function display* ..... 123, 62
10 Controls on the steering wheel ..... 85
11 Left seat heating button ..... 134
12 Controls for
– Heating* and ventilation ..... 153
– Climatic* ..... 155
– Climatronic* ..... 159
13 Radio/Navigator*
14 Right seat heating button ..... 134
15 Indication lamp for deactivated front passenger airbag ..... 44
16 Front passenger airbag ..... 30
17 Glove compartment lever ..... 137
18 Gear shift lever ..... 172
19 Cup holder compartment ..... 142
20 Controls on the centre console:
– Central locking ..... 93
– ESP* ..... 187
– Tyre pressure control* ..... 233
– Cigarette lighter / Socket ..... 146
– Wing mirror adjustment ..... 128
21 Handbrake ..... 176
22 Hazard warning light switch ..... 116
23 Pedals
24 Ignition lock ..... 167
25 Steering column control lever* ..... 165
26 Handle for releasing the bonnet ..... 215
27 Button for opening and closing the front windows ..... 106
28 Safety switch* for the rear windows ..... 106
29 Control* for opening and closing the rear windows ..... 106

**Note**

Some of the items of equipment listed here are fitted only on certain models/model years or are optional extras. ■

# Instruments

## Instrument overview

*The instruments display the vehicle operating status.*

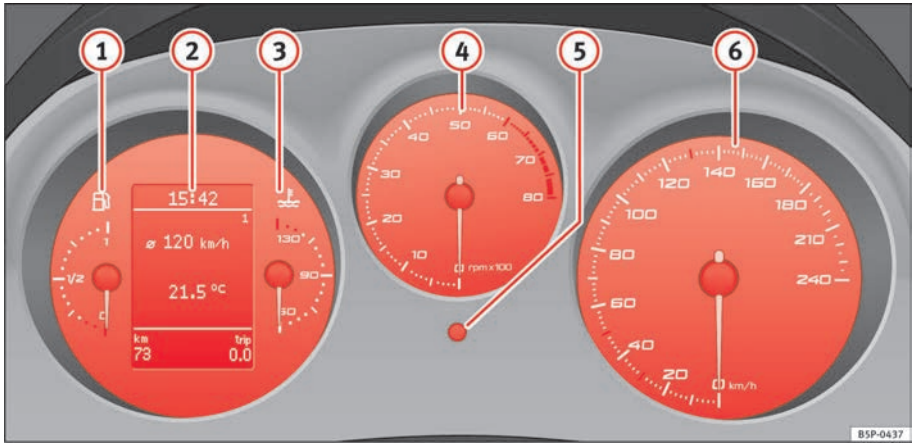


**Fig. 33 Detailed view of instrument panel: instrument panel**

Detailed view of instrument panel: instrument panel

1. Fuel gauge ⇒ page 58
2. Multi-function display
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 58
4. Rev counter ⇒ page 59
5. Time adjustment button / trip recorder reset button ⇒ page 59
6. Speedometer ■

## Fuel gauge and reserve indicator

Fig. 34 Instrument panel: fuel gauge

Instrument panel: fuel gauge

The fuel tank has a capacity of approx. 55 litres.

When the needle reaches the reserve zone ⇒ fig. 34 (arrow), the warning lamp will light and an acoustic signal will sound **reminding the driver to refuel**. At this point there are still about 7 litres of fuel in the tank.

The following text appears on the instrument panel display[3] **PLEASE REFUEL [XXX]**.* ■

## Engine coolant temperature display

*This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.*

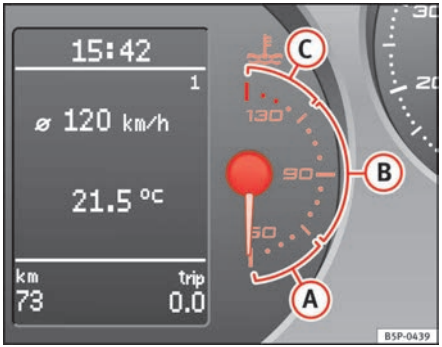


Fig. 35 Instrument panel: engine coolant temperature gauge

**Needle in cold zone (A)**

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads ⇒ fig. 35.

**Needle in normal zone (B)**

In normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle section of the scale. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern as long as the warning lamp does not light up and no warning* text appears in the combi-instrument display.

**Needle in warning zone (C)**

The warning lamp* ⇒ page 75, fig. 48 (2) will light up if the needle is in the warning zone. The following warning appears on the instrument panel ▶

[3] Depending on the version of the model.

display [4]. **Stop the car and switch off the engine.** Check the coolant level ⇒ page 222 ⇒ ⚠.

Even if the coolant level is correct **do not continue driving**. You should obtain technical assistance.

**WARNING**

**When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 215.**

**Caution**

Accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating. ■

## Rev counter

*The rev. counter displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.*

The start of the red zone ⇒ page 57, fig. 33 (4) indicates the maximum engine speed operating at service temperature. However, it is advisable to change up a into a higher gear, move the selector lever to D or lift your foot off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red zone.

**Caution**

The rev counter needle must never enter the red zone on the scale. Risk of engine damage.

[4] Depending on the version of the model.

**For the sake of the environment**

Changing up into higher gears early will help you to save fuel and minimise engine noise. ■

## Speedometer

The speedometer is equipped with a digital odometer and a trip counter, in addition to a service intervals display.

During the running-in period, the instructions shown on ⇒ page 192 should be followed. ■

## Setting the digital clock*

*The digital clock is located in the instrument panel display.*

– Turn the setting knob ⇒ page 57, fig. 33 (5) clockwise until the first “click” to set the hour. The hour will flash. To change the hour, press the button.

– Turn the setting knob clockwise to the second “click” to set the minutes. The minutes will flash. To change the minutes, press the button. ■

# Digital display in the instrument panel

## Display (without warning or information texts)

*The display in the instrument panel shows, amongst other things, the mileage and trip recorder as well as the selector lever position.*

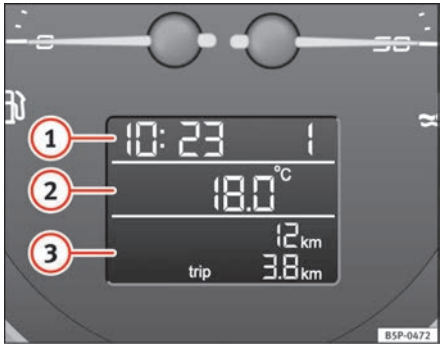


**Fig. 36 Detail of the instrument cluster: screen with different indicators**

(1) Digital clock display ⇒ page 59. On the right of the display: Selector lever position display for the automatic gearbox*. The current position of the selector lever or the gear which is engaged (for Tiptronic)* is highlighted.

(2) Ambient temperature.

(3) Distance display or flexible service interval display*. ■

## Displayed categories*

*The display in the instrument panel shows the mileage and trip recorder as well as the selector lever position.*

**Fig. 37 Digital display in the instrument panel**

(1) Clock: “Setting the time”. On the right of the display: Selector lever position display for the automatic gearbox*. The actual position of the selector lever or the gear which is engaged (for Tiptronic) are highlighted.

(2) There are optional and automatic displays in this field.

– **Optional indicators:** e.g. those on the multi-function display (MFD)

– **Automatic indicators:** Information texts and warnings.

– Menus providing further information and which can be used to make diverse settings are also shown: “Instrument panel menus”

(3) Ambient temperature:

(4) Distance display or flexible service interval display. ■

## Recommended gear display*

*This display helps to save fuel.*

Fig. 38 Gear display

Use the gear display to save fuel. If you are driving in the correct gear, a dot will be shown next to the gear display. If you are not in the correct gear, an arrow will appear next to the gear display indicating whether you should change up or down. ■

## Mileage display or Service Interval Display

### Distance display

The left-hand counter in the display registers the total amount of distance covered by the vehicle.

The right-hand counter registers the short journeys. The last digit indicates steps of 100 metres. The trip recorder counter may be reset by holding down the reset button ⇒ page 57, fig. 33 ⑥ for a few seconds.

### Service interval display

A **Service pre-warning** will appear in the mileage displays if a service is due soon. A “spanner” symbol appears and the display “km” with the distance that can be driven until the next service appointment is due. The display will change after approximately 10 seconds. A “clock symbol” appears and the number of days until the service appointment should be carried out. The following message is shown in the instrument panel display: **SERV. IN... KM OR... DAYS**. The service message will disappear approximately 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. The normal display can be resumed by pressing the reset button on the trip counter or by pressing the rocker switch of the MFI ⇒ page 62, fig. 39 Ⓑ.

With the ignition switched on, you can call up the current **service message** by pressing the trip counter reset knob for 2 seconds.

An **overdue service** is indicated by a minus sign in front of the mileage or day information. ■

## Display with multi-function display (MFD)*

*The multi-function display (MFD) shows you information on the journey and fuel consumption.*

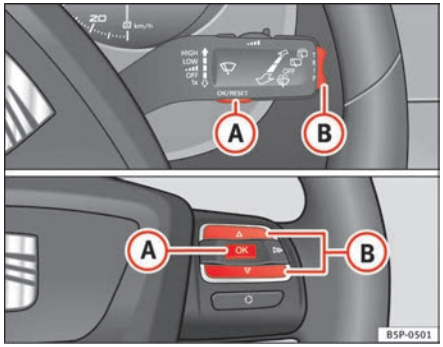


**Fig. 39 Rocker buttons A and B. Steering wheel controls.**

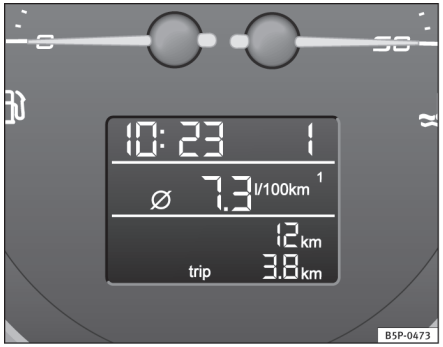


**Fig. 40 Digital display in the instrument panel**

The multi-function system uses two automatic memories: **1 - Actual memory** and **2 - Total memory**. The selected memory will be shown in the upper right-hand corner of the display.

### Selecting a memory

– When the ignition is on, briefly press button ⇒ fig. 39 (A) on the windscreen wiper lever to change from one memory to another or press button (A) on the steering wheel controls ⇒ fig. 39.

### Resetting a memory

– Select the memory that you would like to reset.

– Hold down button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever or button (A) on the steering wheel controls for at least 2 seconds.

The **trip memory 1** collects the travel and consumption rates from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued within two hours of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than two hours.

The **journey memory 2** collects the journey data for any number of individual journeys (even if the ignition is switched off for longer than two hours) up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes travel time, 9,999 km distance travelled and 999 litres of fuel consumed. The memory will automatically be deleted if one of the named values is reached. ■

## Displays in the multi-function display (MFD)*

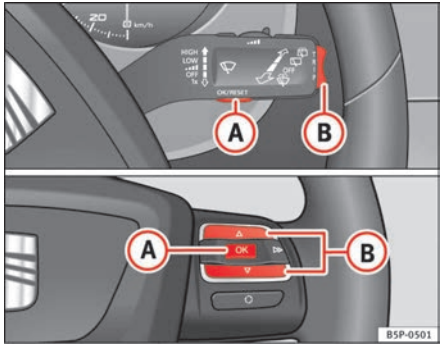


Fig. 41 Rocker buttons A and B. Steering wheel controls.

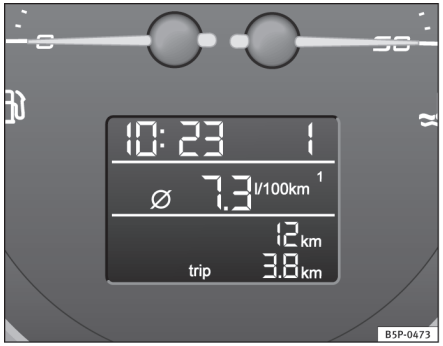


Fig. 42 Digital instrument panel display: average fuel consumption indicator.

You can switch between the following displays in the multi-function display (MFD) by operating the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 41 (B) on the windscreen wiper lever.

**Memory displays**

- Driving speed
- Journey duration
- Average speed
- Distance
- Distance to empty (the distance you can travel with the remaining fuel)
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption
- Ambient temperature display
- Speed warning

**Km/h - Driving speed**

Driving speed is digitally shown on the display.

**min - Journey duration**

The display shows the amount of time which has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

**Økm/h - Average speed**

The average speed will be shown after running a distance of approximately 100 metres. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion.

**km - Distance travelled**

The display shows the distance travelled since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 9999 km. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

### Km - Fuel range

The fuel range is calculated using the figures for tank content and current fuel consumption. It shows how far the vehicle can travel using the same conditions as a reference.

### Ø litre/100 km - Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption will be shown ⇒ page 63, fig. 42 after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion. The amount of fuel used will not be shown.

### ltr/100 km or ltr/hr - Current fuel consumption

The display will show the current fuel consumption in litre/km whilst the vehicle is in motion or in litre/hour when the vehicle is in a stationary position with the engine running.

Using this display you can see how your driving style affects fuel consumption ⇒ page 194.

### Ambient temperature display

The measurement margin extends from -45°C to +58°C. At temperatures lower than +4°C, an "ice crystal symbol" is displayed and a "warning" sounds if the vehicle is moving at more than 20 km/h (ice warning). This symbol will flash for about 10 seconds and remains lit until the exterior temperature rises above +4°C or 6°C if it was already lit.

### Set speed indicator

When driving at the required speed, enter the speed indicator mode and press the button (A) (Reset), the display remembers the indicated speed. If the indicated speed is exceeded, a warning text is displayed on the screen [5] and a warning signal sounds.

This may be deactivated by pressing the button (A) (Reset).

[5] Depending on the model version, the message on the screen may vary and may be represented by flashing of the speed indication or by a speed message.

The speed may be altered using the rocker switch (B) in steps of 5 km/h within 5 seconds of the initial memory value.

**WARNING**

**There could be black ice on the road surface even if the "snowflake symbol" is not shown. You should, for this reason, not rely exclusively on this display - Risk of accident!**

**Note**

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual ambient temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine. ■

## Warning or information text in the display*

*Faults are shown in the display with warning lamps and warning/information reports.*

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Functional faults are indicated by symbols with warnings and information texts in the display. An audible warning is given in certain cases.

### Warning symbols

There are red warning symbols (priority 1) and yellow warning symbols (priority 2)

### Information text

In addition to warning messages given on a fault, you will receive information in the display on procedures or will be asked to carry out certain tasks. ▶

**Note**

In the case of screens without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the warning lamps. ■

## Warning reports, Priority 1 (red)*

If one of these faults occurs, the warning lamp will flash or light up and will be accompanied by **three audible warnings**. This is a **danger** warning. Stop the car and switch off the engine. Check the fault and correct it. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.

If several priority 1 faults are detected at the same time, the symbols will be displayed one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time and will continue until the fault is corrected.

No menus will be shown in the display for the duration of a priority 1 warning report.

**Examples of priority 1 warning reports (red)**

- Brake system symbol with warning text **STOP BRAKE FLUID INSTRUCTION MANUAL** or **STOP BRAKE FAULT INSTRUCTION MANUAL**
- Coolant symbol with the warning text **STOP SEE COOLANT SERVICE MANUAL**.
- Engine oil pressure symbol with the warning text **STOP ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW! SERVICE MANUAL**. ■

## Warning reports, Priority 2 (yellow)*

If one of these faults occurs, the warning lamp lights up, and is accompanied by **one audible warning**. The function should be checked as soon as possible.

If several priority 2 warning reports are detected at the same time, the symbols are displayed one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time. After a set time, the information text will disappear and the symbol will be shown as a reminder at the side of the display.

**Priority 2** warning reports will not be shown until all **Priority 1** warning reports have been dealt with!

**Examples of priority 2 warning reports (yellow):**[6)]

- Fuel warning light with the information text **PLEASE REFUEL**.
- Windscreen washer fluid symbol with the information text **REFILL WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID**. Refill the windscreen washer tank ⇒ page 224. ■

6) Depending on the version of the model.

# Instrument panel menus*

## Example of menu use

*All the menus on the instrument panel may be used according to the following procedure. The instrument panel menus may vary according to the version of the model.*

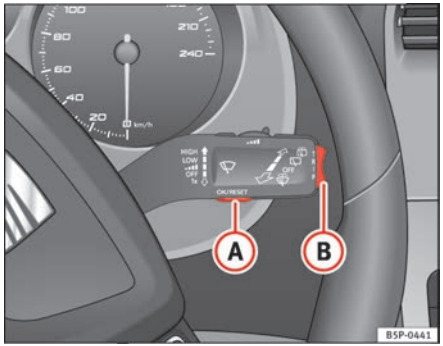


Fig. 43 Windscreen wiper lever: button A to confirm the menu selection and rocker switch B to change the menu

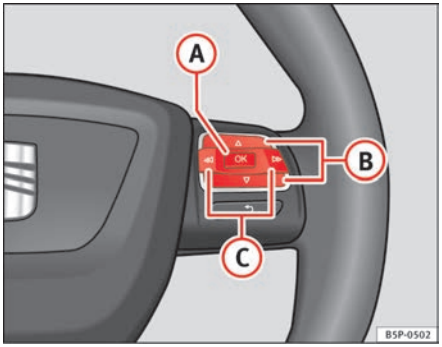


Fig. 44 Steering wheel controls: button A to confirm the menu selection and switch B to change the menu

The setting of a speed warning will be used as an example of how to use the menus. This is a good idea if you are, for example, using winter tyres which are not suited for the top speed of the vehicle.

**1. Open the main menu with the MFD lever**

– Switch the ignition on.

– Hold down button (B) for two seconds to return to main menu from other menu. It may be necessary to repeat this operation until the main menu is displayed.

**2. Open the menu “Configuration” with the MFD lever**

– To choose an option from the menu, press the upper or lower end of the rocker switch. The selected option is displayed between two lines and there will also be a triangle on the right.

– Select menu **Configuration**.

– Press button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever. The **Configuration** menu is opened.

**2. Access the "Configuration" menu with the steering wheel controls**

– To access the "Configuration" menu, press button (C) ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 until the menu is displayed. Now you are in this menu.

**3. Open the main menu "Winter tyres"**

– Select option **Winter tyres** using switch (B).

– Press button (A). The menu **Winter tyres** is opened.

**4. Program a speed limit warning**

– Use switch (B) to select the menu entry **+10 km/h** or **-10 km/h** and press button (B) to either increase or decrease the set speed.

**5. To activate and deactivate the speed limit warning**

– Use switch (B) to select the menu point **On / Off** and press the button to switch the speed warning on or off. If the speed warning is deactivated, three dashes will be displayed **---**

**6. To close the menu "Winter tyres"**

– In the menu select **Back**.

The function "Winter tyres" sends an optical and an acoustic signal when the vehicle reaches the set speed.

**Example menu "Winter tyres"**

| On the display<br>Winter tyres | Function<br>Name of menu displayed |
|---|---|
| **X km/h** | The current set speed is displayed |
| **or ---** | or dashes will be shown if the function is deactivated. |
| **On / Off** | If the function is activated or deactivated |
| **+10 km/h** | The set value increases by 10 km/h |
| **-10 km/h** | The set value decreases by 10 km/h |
| **Back** | The menu "Winter tyres" is closed and the last displayed menu is shown. |

**Note**

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

## Main menu

*The menu provides access to the different display functions (only with the MFD lever).*

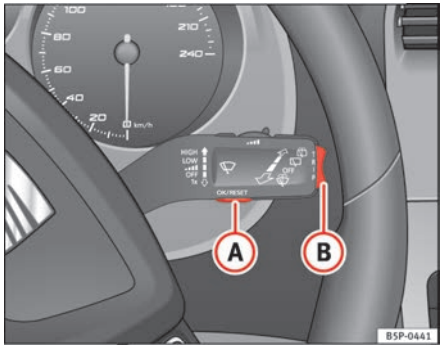


**Fig. 45 Windscreen wiper lever (MFD): button A to confirm the menu selection and rocker switch B to change the menu**

**Fig. 46 Digital instrument panel display: Main menu**

### Open main menu

– Switch the ignition on.

– Press and hold the eject button (B) for at least 2 seconds. It may be necessary to repeat this operation until the main menu is displayed.

### Select a menu from the main menu

– To choose an option from the menu, press the upper or lower end of rocker switch (B). The selected option is displayed between two horizontal lines.

– Press button (A) to select the entry.

Example of menu use ⇒ page 66

| Main menu | Function |
|---|---|
| **Multi-function display** | Change to the multi-function display (MFD): “Multi-function display (MFD)” |
| **Audio** | The current station will be shown when the radio is switched on. |
| **Navigation** | This menu is only available if the vehicle is fitted with a navigation system. The navigation system must be switched on. When the route guidance is activated, the turning arrows and proximity bars are displayed. The display is similar to that of the Navigation system.<br>If the route guidance is not activated, the direction of travel (compass) and the name of the street along which you are driving are shown. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Telephone** | This menu is only available if the vehicle is fitted with a telephone mounted by the manufacturer: “Fixed telephone installation” |
| **Vehicle condition** | This menu displays current warning or information texts: “Vehicle status menu”<br>This option flashes when one of these texts is displayed. |
| **Configuration** | This option allows the time, the speed warning when using winter tyres, units, language, independent heating, the Light and visibility menu and the Convenience menu to be reset. |

**Note**

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

## Multi-function display menu (MFD)

*The multi-function display (MFD) shows you information on the journey and fuel consumption.*

**Fig. 47 Multifunction display (MFD) instrument panel display.**

The multifunction display (MFD) has two automatic memories: **1 - Trip memory and 2 - Total memory**. The selected memory is shown on the upper right hand section of the display ⇒ fig. 47 at all times.

**Open the multifunction display menu**

– Select the **Multifunction display** menu from the main menu ⇒ page 68 and press the OK button on the windscreen wiper lever or the multifunction lever*.

**Selecting a memory**

– To change from one memory to another, briefly press button A ⇒ page 66, fig. 43 ⇒ page 66 on the windscreen wiper lever or the OK button on the multifunction lever ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 ⇒ page 66 while the ignition is switched on.

### Resetting a memory

– Select the memory where you wish to erase the values.
– Hold down button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever or the OK button on the multifunction* steering wheel for at least 2 seconds.

The **journey memory 1** collects the travel and consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued within two hours of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than two hours.

The **total journey memory 2** collects the journey data for any number of individual journeys (even if the ignition is switched off for longer than two hours) up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes travel time or 9999 miles distance travelled. The memory will automatically be deleted if one of the named values is reached.

### Memory indications

The following data can be viewed on the multifunction display using the rocker switch (B) ⇒ page 66, fig. 43 ⇒ page 66 on the windscreen wiper lever or by pressing button △ or ▽ ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 on the multifunction steering wheel*.

- Duration
- Current fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption
- Distance to empty (the distance you can travel with the remaining fuel)
- Distance
- Average speed
- Digital display of speed[7)]
- Speed warning to --- km/h

[7)] It is not possible to see whether the alternative speed display is activated.

### Personal selection of display

The driver can establish which displays are shown on the instrument panel display as required:

- Select the submenu **Multifunction Display Data** from the **Configuration** menu ⇒ page 72.
- The displays can be activated or deactivated individually by marking the required option and pressing the OK button on the windscreen wiper lever or the multifunction steering wheel*.

### Duration in h and min

The display shows the amount of time which has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

### Current fuel consumption in l/100km or l/h

The display will show the current fuel consumption in mpg whilst the vehicle is in motion or in litres/hour when the vehicle is in a stationary position with the engine running.

Using this display you can see how your driving style affects fuel consumption.

### Average consumption in l/100km

The average fuel consumption will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion. The amount of fuel used will not be shown.

### Fuel range in km

The fuel range is calculated using the figures for tank content and current fuel consumption. It shows how far the vehicle can travel using the same conditions as a reference.

**Distance travelled in km**

The display shows the distance travelled since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 9999 miles. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

**Average speed in km/h**

The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion.

**Digital display of speed**

The instrument panel display gives the speed in digital format[7)].

**Speed warning to --- km/h**

This function may help you to keep within the speed limits. Press the OK button on the windscreen wiper lever A or the multifunction steering wheel* to select the current speed. The instrument panel display gives the selected speed, for example, **Speed warning 120 km/h**. You have five seconds to reset the speed between 30 km/hand 250 km/h using rocker switch B or buttons △ or ▽ on the multifunction steering wheel*. Press the OK button or wait five seconds until the speed is stored and the warning is activated. If the set speed is exceeded, an acoustic signal is heard and a warning message is displayed until the speed is reduced to at least 4 km/h below the stored speed. The function is switched off by pressing the OK button again. **Speed warning --- km/h** is now displayed on the instrument panel.

**Ambient temperature display**

The measurement margin ranges from -40°C (-40°F) to +50°C (+125°F). At outside temperatures below +4°C (+39.2°F), “a snowflake symbol” (ice warning) appears in addition to the outside temperature display. This symbol flashes for a few seconds and remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+42.8°F).

**WARNING**

**There could be black ice on the road surface even if the “snowflake symbol” is not shown. You should, for this reason, not rely exclusively on this display - Risk of accident!**

**Note**

- There are different instrument panels; therefore the multifunction display may vary.
- When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual ambient temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.
- Vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel* do not have buttons on the windscreen wiper lever. The multifunction display can only be controlled from the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel*. ■

## Vehicle status menu

*This menu shows warning or information texts*

**Open Vehicle Condition menu**

– Select the option **Vehicle status** from the main menu: “Main menu” and press button OK on the windscreen wiper lever A ⇒ page 68, fig. 45. **or**

– Press button ▷ or ◁ on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 until the **Vehicle Status** menu is displayed.

Priority 2 warning messages and information texts: “Information and warning messages on the screen” will automatically disappear from the screen after a time and will be stored in the **Vehicle status** menu. ▶

The warning and information texts may be viewed in this menu. If there is no warning or information message, the option **Vehicle status** is not displayed. If there are several messages, each one is shown for a few seconds.

Example of menu use ⇒ page 66

**Note**

If there are no warning messages, this menu is not available. ■

## Configuration menu

*This menu is used to make the settings for the vehicle functions.*

### Open Configuration menu

– Select the option **Configuration** from the main menu: "Main menu" and press button OK (A) ⇒ page 66, fig. 43 on the windscreen wiper lever. **or**

– Press button ▷ or ◁ on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 until the **Configuration** menu is displayed.

Example of menu use ⇒ page 66

| Displayed on the screen | Function |
|---|---|
| **Multifunction display data** | This menu is used to establish the data in the multifunction display menu to be displayed on the instrument panel ⇒ page 69 |
| **Convenience** | This menu allows you to make the settings for the convenience functions in the vehicle. |
| **Lights and visibility** | From this menu it is it possible to alter the vehicle lighting settings. |
| **Time** | The hours and minutes of the clock and the navigation system can be changed. Choose between 12 or 24-hour format and change to summer time. |
| **Winter tyres** | The menu allows the setting of a speed at which an optical and acoustic warning will be given by the system. You can use this function, for example, if you have fitted winter tyres which are not suited for the top speed of your vehicle. Please see the section "Wheels and tyres". |
| **Settings: Language** | The display texts and the navigation system texts can be seen in different languages. |
| **Units** | This option allows you to select the units for displaying temperature, fuel consumption values and distances. |
| **Aux. Speed** | The instrument panel also displays the speed in another different unit of measurement (mph or km/h) to that given on the speedometer. |
| **Inter Service** | Consult service messages and reset service interval display here. |
| **Manufacturer's settings** | The manufacturer's predefined values for the functions of this menu are restored. |
| **Back**[a)] | This returns to the main menu |

[a)] Only of the windscreen wiper lever is used (MFD).

**Note**

- For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ▶

- SEAT dealers are able to programme other functions or change the existing functions depending upon the vehicle equipment.
- The Configuration menu is only accessible when the vehicle is at a standstill. ■

## Convenience menu

*From this menu it is it possible to alter the vehicle convenience settings.*

### Open menu Convenience

– Choose the option **Configuration** from the main menu and press the button OK (A) ⇒ page 66, fig. 43on the windscreen wiper lever.

– Press button ▷ or ◁ on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 until the **Configuration** menu is displayed.

– Choose the option **Convenience** from the main menu and press the button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever.

Example of menu use ⇒ page 66

| Displayed on the screen | Function |
|---|---|
| **Open door** | One door: Individual unlocking activated.<br>Auto. locking: the doors are automatically locked when the vehicle is travelling at more than approx 15 km/h.<br>Auto unlock: the doors are unlocked when the key is removed from the ignition. |
| **Elec. window control** | Opening and closing electric windows: this determines whether to open or close all the windows when the vehicle is unlocked or locked. The open function can also be activated for the driver's door only. |
| **Wing mirror adjust.** | If synchronised adjustment is selected, when the driver's side wing mirror is adjusted, the passenger wing mirror is also moved. |
| **Manufacturer's settings** | The manufacturer's predefined values for the functions of this menu are restored. |
| **Back** | This returns to the Configuration menu |

**Note**

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

## Lights and visibility menu

*From this menu it is it possible to alter the vehicle lighting settings.*

### Open Lights and visibility Menu

– Select the option **Configuration** from the main menu: “Main menu” and press button OK (A) ⇒ page 66 on the windscreen wiper lever. **or**

– Press button ▷ or ◁ on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 66, fig. 44 until the **Configuration** menu is displayed.

– Select the option **Lights & visibility** from the menu and press button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever.

Example of menu use ⇒ page 66

| Displayed on the screen | Function |
|---|---|
| **Coming Home/ Leaving Home** | This option permits the adjustment of the time during which the headlamps remain lit after the vehicle is locked, and also permits the function to be connected and disconnected |
| **Indicator conf.** | The comfort indicator function can be activated or deactivated here. With the comfort mode activated, the indicator will blink at least three times when turned on. |
| **Manufacturer's settings** | The manufacturer's predefined values for the functions of this menu are restored. |
| **Back** | This returns to the Configuration menu |

**Note**

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

# Warning lamps

## Overview of the warning lamps

*The warning lamps indicate a number of different functions and possible faults.*

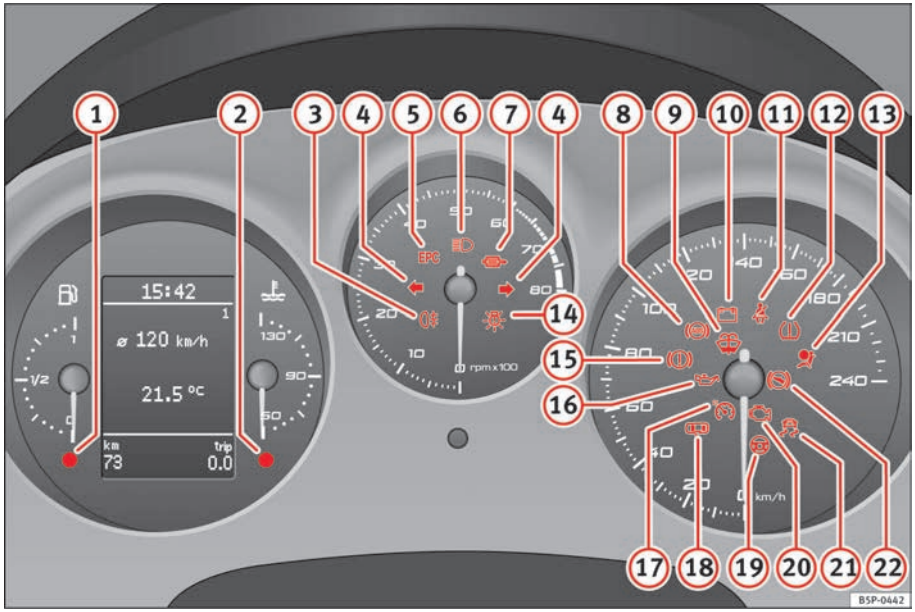


Fig. 48 Instrument panel with warning lamps. Some of the items of equipment listed here are fitted only on certain models/model years or are optional extras.

| Item | Symbol | Meaning of warning and control lamps | Further information |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | Fuel level / reserve | ⇒ page 77 |
| 2 | | Coolant level / coolant temperature | ⇒ page 77 |
| 3 | | Rear fog light switched on | ⇒ page 78 |
| 4 | | Turn signals in operation | ⇒ page 78 |
| 5 | EPC | Engine fault (petrol engine) | ⇒ page 78 |
| | | Glow plug system for diesel engine | ⇒ page 78 |
| 6 | | Main beam switched on | ⇒ page 79 |
| 7 | | Pollen accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter | ⇒ page 79 |
| 8 | ABS | ABS system fault | ⇒ page 79 |
| 9 | | Windscreen washer fluid level | ⇒ page 80 |
| 10 | | Alternator fault | ⇒ page 80 |
| 11 | | Fasten seat belts! | ⇒ page 19 |
| 12 | | Tyre pressure | ⇒ page 80 |
| 13 | | Airbag or belt tension device system fault or airbag disabled | ⇒ page 28<br>⇒ page 31 |

| Item | Symbol | Meaning of warning and control lamps | Further information |
|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | | Bulb defective | ⇒ page 81 |
| 15 | | Parking brake applied<br>or low brake fluid level or<br>fault in brake system | ⇒ page 81 |
| 16 | | Engine oil pressure | ⇒ page 82 |
| 17 | | Cruise control system switched on | ⇒ page 82 |
| 18 | | Door open indicator | ⇒ page 82 |
| 19 | | Electromechanical steering | ⇒ page 82 |
| 20 | | Fault in the emission control system | ⇒ page 83 |
| 21 | | **If flashing:** electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) is working<br>**If it remains lit:** ESP malfunction or off | ⇒ page 83 |
| 22 | | Automatic selector lever lock (automatic gearbox) | ⇒ page 84 |
| | SAFE | Electronic immobiliser | ⇒ page 84 |

**WARNING**

- **Failure to observe warning lamps and warning messages can result in serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle.**
- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Use a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users in order to prevent danger to thirds.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The engine compartment is a dangerous area! Before you open the bonnet to work on the engine or in the engine compartment, you must switch the engine off and allow it to cool to reduce the risk of scalding or other kind of injuries. Read and observe the relevant warnings ⇒ page 215.**

**Note**

- The appropriate warning lamp for a fault will light up in vehicles without warning or information texts in the display.
- In vehicles with warning or information texts on the screen, the appropriate warning lamp for a fault will light up and a warning or information text will also appear on the screen. ■

## Fuel level / reserve

*This symbol lights up to indicate that the fuel tank under the reserve level.*

It lights up when only 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank. Also, an **audible warning** is given. This serves as a reminder to fill up with fuel at the earliest opportunity ⇒ page 212.

The instrument panel displays the following message[8]: **PLEASE REFUEL!**. ■

[8] Depending on the version of the model.

## Coolant Level* / temperature

*The warning lamp lights up if the coolant temperature is too high or if the coolant level is too low.*

**There is a fault if:**

- The warning symbol does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning lamp lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving, while **three acoustic warning signals** ⇒ ⚠ are emitted.

This means that either the coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high.

**Coolant temperature too high**

The instrument panel displays the following message[9]: **CHECK COOLANT INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**. ⇒ page 222.

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. The coolant temperature is too high if the needle is over the warning area on the dial. **Stop the vehicle, switch the engine off and wait for it to cool down.** Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a malfunction of the radiator fan. Check the radiator fan fuse and have it replaced if necessary ⇒ page 251.

If the warning lamp lights up again after driving on for a short distance, **stop the vehicle and switch the engine off**. Contact an Authorised Service Centre or a qualified workshop.

**Coolant level too low**

The instrument panel displays the following message[10]: **STOP CHECK COOLANT INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

[9] Depending on the version of the model.
[10] Depending on the version of the model.

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. If the needle is in the normal range, top up with coolant at the earliest opportunity ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- **If your vehicle is immobilised for any technical reasons, move it to a safe distance from traffic. Turn the engine off, turn the hazard lights on and place the warning triangle.**
- **Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Risk of scalding. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.**
- **The engine compartment is a dangerous area! Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Always note the corresponding warnings ⇒ page 215.** ■

## Rear fog light

This warning lamp lights up when the rear fog light is switched on. Further information ⇒ page 111. ■

## Turn signals

*The warning lamp flashes when the indicators are in operation.*

Depending on which indicator is operating, either the left ⇦ or right ⇨ indicator lamp flashes. Both warning lamps will flash at the same time when the hazard warning lights are switched on.

If any of both indicators fails, the warning lamp will start flashing twice faster than normal.

Further information on the indicators ⇒ page 118. ■

## Engine management* EPC

*This warning lamp monitors the engine management system for petrol engines.*

The warning lamp EPC (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on to show that the lamp is working properly. It should go out once the engine is started.

If there is a fault in the electronic engine management system while you are driving, this warning lamp will light up. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance. ■

## Glow plug system / Engine fault

*The warning lamp lights up to show that the glow plugs are preheating. It flashes if there is an engine fault.*

**Warning lamp is lit**

The warning lamp lights up while the glow plugs are preheating. When the warning lamp goes off, the engine should be started straight away.

**Warning lamp flashes**

If a fault develops in the engine management system while you are driving, the glow plug lamp will flash. Take the vehicle to an Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible and have the engine checked. ■

## Main beam headlights

*This warning lamp lights up when the main beams are on.*

The warning lamp is switched on once main beams are on or once the headlight flasher is operating.

Further information ⇒ page 118. ■

## Soot accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter

If the indicator lights you may help the filter clear itself by driving in the appropriate manner.

To do this, drive about 15 minutes in 4th or 5th gear (automatic gearbox: S gear range) at a speed of 60 km/h, with the engine running at approximately 2000 rpm. In this way, the pollen build up in the filter is burned. When cleaning is successful, the indicator turns off.

If the indicator is not deactivated, bring the vehicle to a specialised workshop to repair the fault.

**WARNING**

- **Always drive according to the road weather conditions, the terrain and traffic. Driving recommendations should never lead to illegal manoeuvres in surrounding traffic.**
- **The diesel engine particulate filter may reach extremely high temperatures; it should not enter into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle. Failure to comply could result in fire.** ■

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

*A warning lamp system monitors the ABS.*

The warning lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It goes out again after the system has run through an automatic test sequence.

**There is a fault in the ABS if:**

- The warning lamp does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning lamp lights up when the vehicle is moving.

The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (except that the ABS control function will not function). Please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop as soon as possible. For further information on the ABS see the ⇒ page 185.

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESP* warning lamp will also light up.

**Brake system fault**

If the ABS warning lamp lights up together with the brake warning lamp , this indicates not only a fault in the ABS function, but also a possible fault in the brake system ⇒ .

**WARNING**

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings on ⇒ page 215, “Working in the engine compartment”.**
- **If the brake warning lamp should light up together with the ABS warning lamp , stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 228, “Brake fluid”. If the fluid level has dropped below the “MIN” mark you must not drive on. Risk of accident. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake fluid level is correct, the fault in the brake system may have been caused by a failure of the ABS system. This could cause the rear**

**WARNING (continued)**

**wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.** ■

## Washer fluid

*This warning lamp lights up to indicate that the windscreen washer level is too low.*

This serves as a reminder to fill up the reservoir at the earliest opportunity ⇒ page 224.

The following message is shown on the instrument panel display*[11]: **REFILL WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID**. ■

## Alternator

*This warning lamp signals a fault in the alternator.*

The warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If the warning lamp lights up while driving, the alternator is no longer charging the battery. You should immediately drive to the nearest qualified workshop.

You should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery. ■

[11] Depending on the version of the model.

## Tyre pressure* (!)

*The tyre pressure control system controls the tyre speed and the frequency spectrum of each tyre.*

**Fig. 49 Centre console: tyre monitor system button**

The tyre monitor [12] compares wheel revolutions and with this information, the diameter of each wheel using the ESP sensors. If the diameter of a wheel changes, the tyre monitor indicator lights (!). The wheel diameter changes when:

- Tyre pressure is insufficient.
- The tyre structure is damaged.
- The vehicle is unbalanced because of a load.
- The wheels of one axle are under more pressure (for example, driving with a trailer or on extreme slopes).
- The vehicle is fitted with snow chains.
- The emergency wheel is fitted.

[12] Depending on the model version

- The wheel on one axle is changed.

**Tyre pressure adjustment**

Following the modification to tyre pressure or after changing one or more wheels, the button ⇒ page 80, fig. 49 must be kept pressed while the ignition is on until an acoustic signal is heard and the warning lamp goes out.

If the wheels are under excessive load (for example, driving with a trailer or heavy load), the tire pressure must be increased to the recommended value for a full load (see the sticker on the inside of the fuel flap). If the tyre monitor system button is pressed down, the new tyre pressures are confirmed.

**The tyre pressure monitor indicator (!) lights up**

If the tyre pressure of one or more wheels is much lower than the value set by the driver, then the tyre control warning lamp lights up ⇒ ⚠.

**The tyre pressure monitor indicator (!) flashes**

If the tyre pressure indicator flashes, this indicates a fault. Go to the nearest specialist workshop.

**WARNING**

- **When the tyre pressure indicator lights, reduce speed immediately and avoid any sudden manoeuvre or braking. Stop when possible, and check the tyre pressure and status.**
- **The driver is responsible for correct tyre pressure. For this reason, tyre pressure must be regularly checked.**
- **Under certain circumstances (for example, in a sports situation, in winter conditions or on a dirt track) the tyre monitor indicator may light or function incorrectly.**

**Note**

If the battery is disconnected, the yellow indicator (!) lights up after turning the ignition on. This should turn off after a brief journey. ■

## Bulb defect

*The warning lamp lights up when a bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting is defective.*

The warning lamp lights up when a bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting (e.g. left-hand main beam) is defective.

The instrument panel displays the following message[13]: **LEFT FULL BEAM FAULTY**. ■

## Brake system* / handbrake

*The warning lamp lights up if the handbrake is applied, if the brake fluid level falls too low or if there is a fault in the brake system.*

**This warning lamp lights up if**

- If the handbrake is on.

If you drive faster than 6 km/h with the handbrake on, the following message will appear on the instrument panel display [14]: **HANDBRAKE ON.** Also, an audible warning is given.

- If the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 228.

The instrument panel displays the following message[14]: **STOP BRAKE FLUID INSTRUCTION MANUAL**.

- If there is a fault in the brake system.

The instrument panel displays the following message[14]: **BRAKE SYSTEM FAULT INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

[13] Depending on the version of the model.
[14] Depending on the version of the model.

This warning lamp can light up together with the anti-lock brake system warning lamp.

**WARNING**

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings on ⇒ page 215.**
- **If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level ⇒ page 228, "Brake fluid" in the reservoir is too low. Risk of accident. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS warning lamp, the control function of the ABS could be out of action. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.** ■

## Engine oil pressure

*This warning lamp indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.*

If this warning symbol starts to flash, and is accompanied by three **audible warnings**, switch off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇒ page 218.

The instrument panel displays the following message[15]: **STOP ENGINE OIL PRESSURE INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

If the symbol flashes although the oil level is correct, *do not* drive on. The engine must not even run at idle speed. Obtain technical assistance. ■

[15] Depending on the version of the model.

## Cruise control system*

*The warning lamp comes on when the cruise control system is switched on.*

The warning lamp lights up when the cruise control system is switched on. Further notes on the cruise control system ⇒ page 180. ■

## Indicator for open doors or tailgate*

*This indicator lights if one of the doors or the tailgate is open.*

The warning light should go off when all the doors are closed correctly.

The system also works when the ignition is switched off. It should go off approx. 15 seconds after the vehicle is locked. ■

## Power steering system*

For vehicles with power steering, the level of steering assistance depends on the vehicle's speed and on the steering angle.

The warning lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It should go out once the engine is started.

If the battery is disconnected, the indicator remains lit, even with the engine running. The warning light only goes off after a distance of approx. 50 m.

There is a fault in the electromechanical steering system if the lamp does not go out or lights up whilst the vehicle is in motion. The indicator may appear in two different colours to indicate faults. If it lights yellow, this indicates a minor fault. If it lights red, seek workshop assistance immediately, if no assistance is available stop driving. Stop the vehicle and seek technical ▶

assistance. The power steering does not work if the battery is flat or if the engine is off (for example, for towing). You should take into account that you will need considerably more power than normal to steer the vehicle if the steering assistance is reduced or has failed completely.

For those vehicles fitted with ESP* the function “Recommended steering manoeuvre” is included. See ⇒ page 187. ■

## Emission control system*

*This warning lamp monitors the exhaust system.*

**Warning lamp flashes:**

When there is misfiring that can damage the catalytic converter. Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop to have the engine checked.

The instrument panel displays the following message[16]: **EXHAUST GAS SEE WORKSHOP**

**Warning lamp is lit:**

If a fault has developed during driving which has reduced the quality of the exhaust gas (e.g. lambda probe fault). Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop to have the engine checked.

The following information text displayed in the instrument panel display : **EXHAUST GAS SEE WORKSHOP**. ■

## Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

*This warning lamp monitors the electronic stabilisation programme.*

This programme includes the ABS, EDL and TCS. This also includes the brake assist system (BAS), automatic cleaning of the brake discs and the trailer stability programme (TSP).

The warning lamp has the following functions:

- It will light for about 2 seconds when the ignition is switched on while a test of the function is carried out.
- It flashes when the ESP is activated when driving.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- It will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS because the ESP operates in conjunction with the ABS.

If the ESP warning lamp lights up and stays on after the engine is started, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the ESP. In this case the ESP can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the warning lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

If the ESP button is activated, the TCS function deactivates and the warning lamp flashes. ■

[16] Depending on the version of the model.

## Differential lock fault (EDL)*

*EDL operates along with the ABS in vehicles equipped with an Electronic Stabilisation Program (ESP)**

A malfunction in the EDL is indicated by the ABS warning lamp (ABS). Please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop as soon as possible. For further information on the EDL ⇒ page 188, “Electronic differential lock (EDL)*”. ■

## Traction control system (TCS)*

*The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerating*

The warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and should turn out after about 2 seconds.

When the TCS is operating while driving, the warning lamp flashes. If the system is deactivated or if there is any fault in the same, the warning lamp will remain lit.

It will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS because the TCS operates in conjunction with the ABS. For further information, see ⇒ page 185, “Brakes”

If the TCS button is activated, the TCS function deactivates and the warning lamp remains lit.

By pressing again, TCS function is reactivated and the warning lamp switched off. ■

## Operating the foot brake

The footbrake must be depressed when this warning lamp lights up. This is necessary when the automatic gearbox* selector lever is moved out of the positions **P** or **N**. ■

## Electronic immobiliser* “Safe”

*This warning lamp flashes if an unauthorised key is used.*

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition. The immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The instrument panel displays the following message[17]: **SAFE**. The vehicle cannot be used in that case ⇒ page 168.

The engine can, however, be started if the appropriate coded SEAT genuine key is used.

**Note**

A perfect operation of the vehicle is ensured if genuine SEAT keys are used. ■

[17] Depending on the version of the model.

# Steering wheel controls*

## General information

The steering wheel includes a multifunction module from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone and radio navigation functions, and the automatic gearbox*, without needing to distract the driver.

There are two versions of the multifunction module:

- Audio version, to control the available audio functions from the steering wheel.
- Audio + Telephone version, to control the available audio functions and the telephone system from the steering wheel.

Both versions may be used to control the Audio system (Radio, CD Audio, CD mp3, CD Changer) and the radio / navigation System, in which case they also control the Navigation system.

- Version for automatic gearbox* ⇒ page 175. ■

## Audio system

### Steering wheel audio version controls

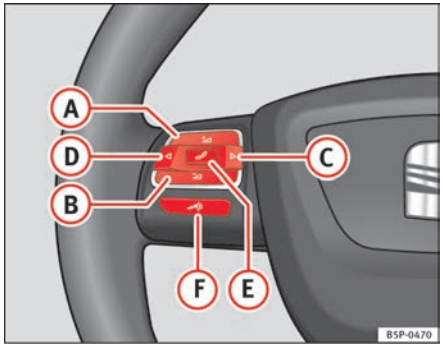


Fig. 50 Controls on the steering wheel

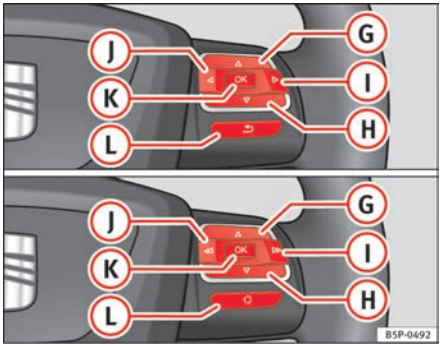


Fig. 51 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

| Button | Radio | CD/MP3/USB*/iPod* | AUX[a)] |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up |
| B | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down |
| C | Search for next station | Next track<br>Hold down: Fast forward | No specified function |
| D | Search for last station | Previous track<br>Hold down: Rewind | No function specified |
| E | No function specified | No function specified | No function specified |
| F | Silence | Pause | Silence |
| G[b)] | Operates on Instrument panel display | Operates on Instrument panel display | Operates on Instrument panel display |
| | Next preset [a)] | Next track [a)] | No function specified[a)] |
| H[b)] | Operates on Instrument panel display | Operates on Instrument panel display | Operates on Instrument panel display |
| | Previous preset [a)] | Previous track [a)] | No function specified[a)] |
| I[b)] | Next preset | Change folder | No function specified |
| | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel |
| J[b)] | Previous preset | Change folder | No function specified |
| | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel |
| K | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel |
| L[b)] | Change source | Change source | Change source |
| | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel |

a) Only if the panel is in Audio menu.
b) Depending on the model version

## Steering wheel Audio + Telephone version controls

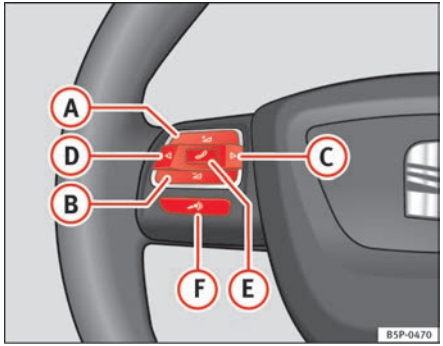


Fig. 52 Controls on the steering wheel

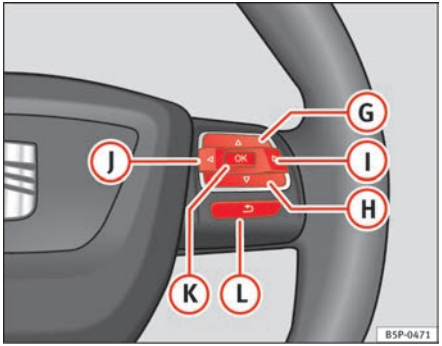


Fig. 53 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

| Button | Radio | CD/MP3/USB*/iPod* | AUX | TELEPHONE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up |
| B | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down |
| C | Search for next station | Next track<br>Hold down: Fast forward | No function specified | No function specified |
| D | Search for last station | Last track<br>Hold down:Rewind | No function specified | No function specified |
| E | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Make call<br>Accept incoming call<br>End call<br>Hold down: reject incoming call |
| F | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| G | Next preset [a)] | Next track [a)] | No function specified | Movement on telephone menu Address book / Last calls / Calls received / Missed calls |
| H | Previous preset [a)] | Previous track [a)] | No function specified | Movement on telephone menu Address book / Last calls / Calls received / Missed calls |
| I | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel |
| J | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel |
| K | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Confirm |
| L | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Return to MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY menu |

a) Only if the instrument panel is in Audio menu.

# Radio navigation system

## Steering wheel audio version controls

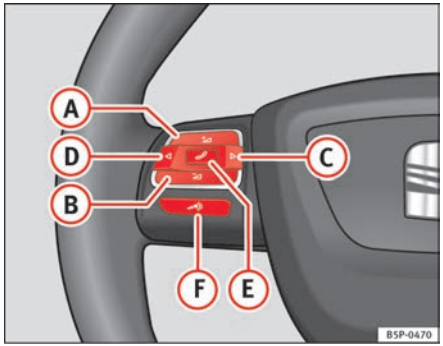


Fig. 54 Controls on the steering wheel

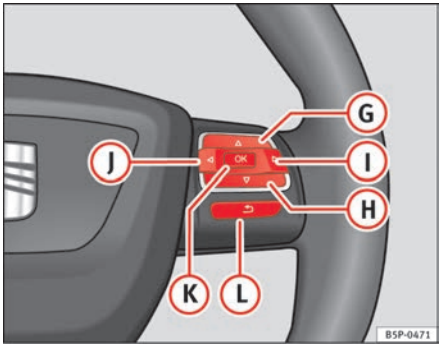


Fig. 55 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

| Button | Radio | CD/MP3/USB*/iPod* | AUX | NAVIGATOR |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up |
| B | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down |
| C | Search for next station | Next track<br>Hold down: Fast forward | No function specified | No function specified |
| D | Search for last station | Last track<br>Hold down:Rewind | No function specified | No function specified |
| E | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | No function specified |
| F | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| G | Next preset [a)] | Next track [a)] | No function specified | Operates on instrument panel |
| H | Previous preset [a)] | Previous track [a)] | No function specified | Operates on instrument panel |
| I | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | No function specified |
| J | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | No function specified |
| K | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel |
| L | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel |

a) Only if the panel is in Audio menu.

## Steering wheel Audio + Telephone controls

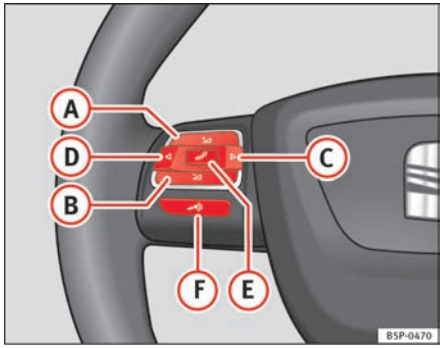


Fig. 56 Controls on the steering wheel

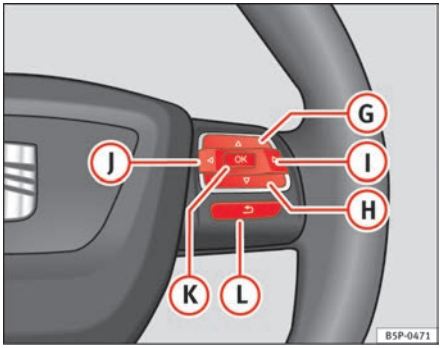


Fig. 57 Steering wheel controls (depending on version of model)

| Button | Radio | CD/MP3/USB*/iPod* | AUX | NAVIGATOR | TELEPHONE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up | Volume up |
| B | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down | Volume down |
| C | Search for next station | Next track<br>Hold down: Fast forward | No function specified | No function specified | No function specified |
| D | Search for last station | Last track<br>Hold down:Rewind | No function specified | No function specified | No function specified |
| E | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | Access telephone menu on instrument panel | No function specified | Make call<br>Accept incoming call<br>End call<br>Hold down: reject incoming call |
| F | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition | Enable voice recognition |
| G | Next preset [a)] | Next track [a)] | No function specified | Operates on instrument panel | Movement on telephone menu<br>Address book / Last calls / Calls received / Missed calls |
| H | Previous preset [a)] | Previous track [a)] | No function specified | Operates on instrument panel | Movement on telephone menu<br>Address book / Last calls / Calls received / Missed calls |
| I | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | No function specified | Change menu on instrument panel |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| J | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | Change menu on instrument panel | No function specified | Change menu on instrument panel |
| K | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Confirm |
| L | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Operates on instrument panel | Return to MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY menu |

a) Only if the panel is in Audio menu.

# Unlocking and locking

## Central locking

### Basic functions

*The central locking system enables you to lock and unlock all doors with just pushing on the keybutton.*

**Description**

Central locking can be activated by using any of the following options:

- **the key**, by inserting it into the driver's door cylinder and rotating it manually,
- **the central locking button** in the passenger compartment as an electronic control ⇒ page 96,
- **the radio frequency remote control**, using the buttons on the key ⇒ page 100.

Various functions are available to improve the vehicle safety:

– Locking system “Safe”
– Selective unlocking system*
– Automatic speed-dependent locking and unlocking system*
– Self-locking system to prevent involuntary unlocking
– Emergency unlocking system

**Unlocking the vehicle***

– Press button 🔓 ⇒ page 100, fig. 63 on remote control to unlock all the doors and tailgate.

**Locking the vehicle***

– Press button 🔒 ⇒ page 100, fig. 63 on the remote control to lock all doors and the tailgate or turn the key in the door to lock all doors and the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle and not manage on their own.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Always take you car keys with you when you leave the vehicle. Misuse of the keys, for example, by children, may result in serious damage and accident.**
  - **The engine may accidentally be started and be out of control.**
  - **If the ignition is switched on, the electric equipment could be activated with risk of injury, for example, in the electric windows.**
  - **The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could make assistance difficult in an emergency situation.**
  - **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock could suddenly engage, and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.**

**Note**

- While the driver's door is open, the vehicle can not be locked with the remote control. This avoids the user from forgetting his key inside the vehicle.
- If the driver's door is unlocked with the key shaft, only the driver's door is unlocked, the rest of the doors remain locked. When the ignition is switched on, the door "safe" deadlock is deactivated (although the doors remain locked) and the central locking button is activated. See ⇒ page 96.
- If the central locking or anti-theft alarm are faulty, the driver's door warning lamp remains lit for approx. 30 seconds after locking the vehicle.
- For anti-theft security, only the driver's door is fitted with a lock cylinder. ■

## Safety system “Safe*”

*The "safe" deadlock makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle because the door release lever and the central locking button are not active (depending upon country).*

### Activating deadlock

– Press *once* the locking button on the remote control. **or**

– Turn the key *once* in the driver's door lock to lock. A warning lamp in the driver door flashes to indicate the "safe" deadlock is working. The warning lamp flashes for approx. two seconds at short intervals and then more slowly.

### Deactivating deadlock when the vehicle is locked

– Press *twice* the locking button on the remote control within two seconds. The vehicle is locked without activating the deadlock. The driver's door warning lamp flashes for approx. two seconds and then goes out. After approx. 30 seconds it starts flashing again.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside if the "safe" deadlock has not been activated. You will have to pull the door release lever once. When the "safe" deadlock is off, the antitheft alarm* remains active. The vehicle interior monitoring system* and the anti-tow system are deactivated*.

**WARNING**

**Nobody should remain in the vehicle if the anti-tow system deadlock mechanism has been activated. It is not possible to open the doors from the inside. Locked doors could make it more difficult to assist vehicle occupants in the event of an accident. People could become trapped inside in an emergency.** ■

## Selective unlocking system*

*This system allows to unlock either just the driver's door or all the vehicle.*

**Using the remote control,** press the unlock button on the remote once. The “Safe” system for all the vehicle is deactivated, only the driver's door is unlocked and both the alarm and the light indicator are also turned off. ▶

**Unlocking all doors and the boot**

The unlock button on the remote must be pressed twice so that all doors and the boot can be opened.

Press twice within 2 seconds to deactivate the “Safe” system for all vehicle, to unlock all doors and to use the boot. The indicator and the alarm (only vehicles fitted with one) are turned off. ■

## Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system*

*This is a safety system which prevent the access to the vehicle from the outside when it is running (for example, when stopped at a traffic light).*

**Locking**

The doors and the boot are automatically locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

If the vehicle is stopped and one of the doors is opened, when the vehicle moves off again and exceeds a speed of 15 km/h, the unlocked door(s) will be locked once more.

**Unlocking**

The driver's door automatically unlocks when the key is removed from the ignition.

Each door can be unlocked and opened independently from the inside (for example, when a passenger gets out of it). To do it, simply operate the lever inside the door.

**WARNING**

**The door handles must not be operated when the vehicle is running: the door would open.** ■

## Automatic locking system for involuntary unlocking*

*It is an anti-theft system and prevents the unintentional unlocking of the vehicle.*

If the vehicle is unlocked and any of the doors (including the tailgate) are opened within 30 seconds, it gets re-locked automatically. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake. ■

## Emergency unlocking system

If the airbags are triggered during an accident, the vehicle gets unlocked, except for the boot. It is possible to lock the vehicle from inside with the central locking, after turning the ignition off and back on again.

If the doors must be locked from the outside, see “Emergency locking of the doors” ■

## Central locking button

*The central locking button allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle from the inside.*

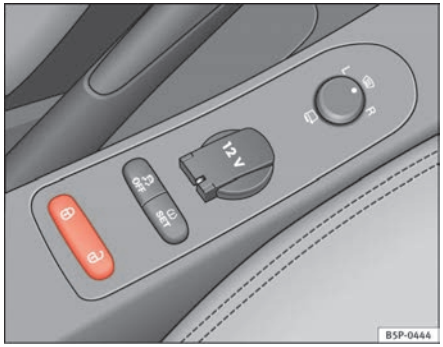


Fig. 58 Detail of the centre console: central locking system button

### Locking the vehicle

– Press the button ⇒ ⚠.

### Unlocking the doors

– Press button.

The central locking button is still operative when the ignition is switched off. Except when the "safe" security system is activated.

Please note the following if you lock your vehicle with the central locking button:

- Safety reasons make not be possible to open the doors or the tailgate from the *outside* (for instance, when stopped at a traffic light).
- The driver or front passenger door cannot be locked if any of the vehicle doors (except the tailgate) are open. This avoids the user from forgetting his key inside the vehicle.
- Repeated operation of the central locking will deactivate the central locking button for 30 seconds. Once this time has passed, the button may be used once more.
- There is a danger of leaving the key inside the vehicle if the vehicle is locked by the central locking button when the driver's door is closed and any of the rear doors open. On closing any of the rear doors, the vehicle locks and the keys remain inside it.
- All doors can be locked separately from inside the car. Do this by pulling the door release lever *once*.

**WARNING**

- **If the vehicle is locked, children and disabled people may be trapped inside it.**
- **The central locking button is not operative in the following cases:**
- **When the vehicle is locked from the outside (by the remote or the key).**
- **While the ignition is not activated after unlocking the door lock cylinder with the key.**

**Note**

- Vehicle locked, amber button.
- Vehicle unlocked, red button. ■

## Unlocking and locking - Manual personalisation

### Activating selective unlocking

With the driver's door open, turn the key to unlock for approx. 3 s ▶

**Deactivating selective unlocking**

With the driver's door open, turn the key to lock for approx. 3 s

The indicator lamps flash to confirm activation or deactivation.

**Activation of automatic locking**

Press the lock button on the central locking button for 3 seconds.

**Deactivation of automatic locking**

Press the unlock button on the central locking button for 3 seconds.

The lock button lamp flashes to confirm activation or deactivation. ■

## Emergency manual locking

*This permits mechanical locking of the doors in case of central locking system failure.*

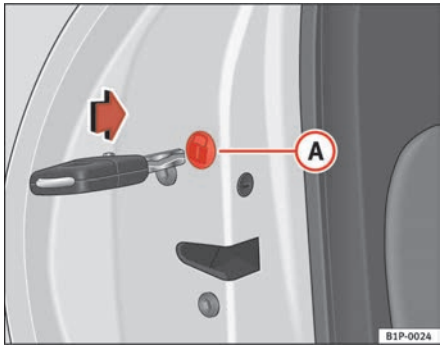


**Fig. 59 Locking the doors manually**

**Locking the driver's door manually**

Insert the key in the door lock cylinder and rotate in a clockwise direction for the left hand side door and anti-clockwise for the right hand side door.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside.

**Manual (emergency) locking of the remaining doors**

Open the door and remove the cap (A) ⇒ fig. 59 printed with a lock image. This will expose a circular element with a groove in the centre. Insert the key into the groove and rotate the element clockwise for the right hand side doors and anticlockwise for the left hand side doors.

Replace the cap and close the door. Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside.

**Unlocking the manually (emergency) locked driver's door**

Insert the key in the door lock cylinder and rotate anti-clockwise for the left hand side doors and clockwise for the right hand side doors.

The door lock is released and the door may be opened using the exterior door handle.

**Unlocking the remaining manually (emergency) locked doors**

First the driver's door must be unlocked to gain entry to the vehicle. Operate the internal door handle for the required door. If the child safety lock is activated on the rear doors, when the interior door release lever is operated the door is unlocked but does not open. The exterior door handle may now be used to open the door.

**Note**

Once the vehicle is open, if you wish to lock it manually (emergency locking), repeat the previous instructions. ■

## Childproof lock

*The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside. This system prevents minors from opening a door accidentally while the vehicle is running.*

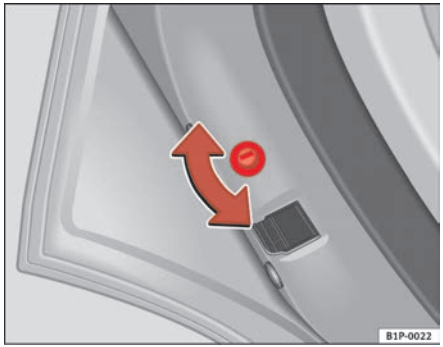


Fig. 60 Child safety lock on the left hand side door

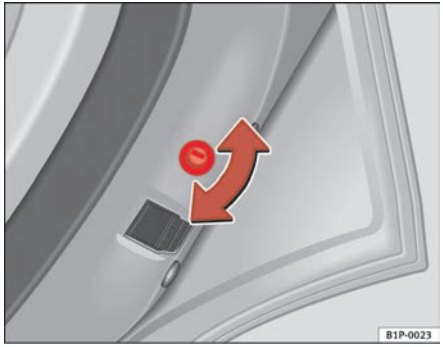


Fig. 61 Child safety lock on the right hand side door

This function is independent of the vehicle electronic opening and locking systems. It only affects rear doors. It can only be activated and deactivated manually, as described below:

### Activating the childproof lock

– Unlock the car and open the door in which you wish to activate the childproof lock.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, clockwise for the left hand side doors, and anti-clockwise for the right hand side doors ⇒ fig. 60 ⇒ fig. 61.

### Deactivating the childproof lock

– Unlock the car and open the door whose childproof lock you want to deactivate.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, clockwise for the right hand side doors, and anti-clockwise for the left hand side doors ⇒ fig. 60 ⇒ fig. 61.

Once the childproof lock is activated, the door can only be opened from the outside. The childproof lock can be activated and deactivated by inserting the key in the groove when the door is open, as described above. ■

# Keys

## Set of keys

*The set of keys includes a remote control, a key without a remote control and a plastic key tab with the number of the key.*

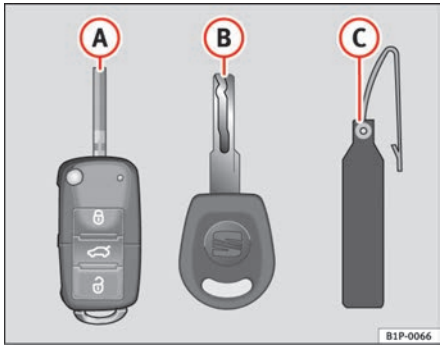


Fig. 62 Set of keys

The set of keys belonging to your vehicle consists of the following items:

- one remote control key ⇒ fig. 62 (A) with folding key bit,
- one key without remote control (B),
- one plastic key tab (C) with the key number.

**Plastic key tab**

Duplicate keys are only issued with the key number on the key tab ⇒ fig. 62 (B). Therefore:

- Always keep the key tab in a safe place.
- Never leave the key tab in the vehicle.

If you sell the vehicle, please give the plastic key tab to the new owner.

**Duplicate keys**

If you need a replacement key, take your key tab to an Authorised Service Centre.

**WARNING**

- **An incorrect use of the keys can cause serious injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle and not manage on their own.**
- **An uncontrolled use of the key could start the engine or activate any electric equipment(e.g. electric windows), causing risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could make the aid difficult in an emergency situation.**
- **Never forget the keys inside the vehicle. An unauthorised use of your vehicle could result in injury, damage or theft. Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise, the steering could suddenly block and it would be impossible to steer the vehicle.**

**Caution**

There are electronic components in the remote control key. Avoid wetting and hitting the keys ■

# Radio frequency remote control

## Locking and unlocking the vehicle

*The remote control key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance.*

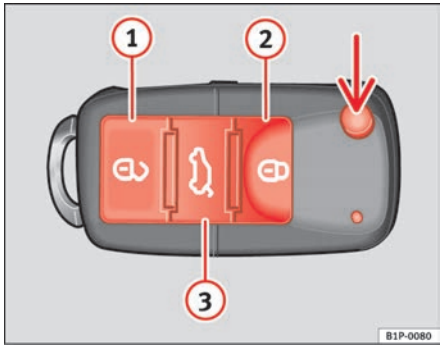


**Fig. 63 Assignment of buttons on the remote control key**

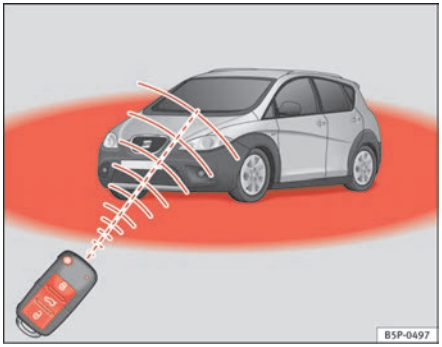


**Fig. 64 Range of the remote control:**

Using the button ⇒ fig. 63 (arrow) on the control, the key shaft is released.

Unlocking the vehicle ⇒ fig. 63 (1).

Locking the vehicle ⇒ fig. 63 (2).

Unlocking the tailgate. Press the button ⇒ fig. 63 (3) until all indicators on the vehicle briefly flash. When the unlocking button (3) is pressed, you have 2 minutes to open the door. Once this time has passed, it will lock once more.

Also, the battery indicator on the key ⇒ fig. 63, will flash.

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are integrated in the key. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The maximum scope of the remote control depends on various conditions. This scope is reduced when the batteries start to lose power.

**Selective unlocking***

When the button ⇒ fig. 63 (1), is pressed once, the driver's door is unlocked, all others remain locked.

Press the button ⇒ fig. 63 (1) twice to unlock all doors.

**WARNING**

- **An improper use of the key can cause serious injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle and not manage on their own.**
- **Never forget the keys inside the vehicle. Otherwise, this could result in serious injuries, accidents or even the theft of your vehicle. Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **An uncontrolled use of the key could start the engine or activate any electric equipment(e.g. electric windows), causing risk of accident. The vehicle can be locked when using the remote control key. This could complicate the aid in cas of emergency.**

**Note**

- The radio-frequency remote control can be programmed by means of pressing the unlocking button once; as a result, only the driver door will unlock. When the button is pressed once more, all doors and the tailgate will be unlocked.
- The remote control functions only when you are in range ⇒ page 100, fig. 64 (red area).
- If the vehicle is unlocked using the 🔓 1 button, it will lock again automatically if any of the doors or the tailgate are not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking it. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.
- If the vehicle cannot be opened and closed using the remote control, the remote control key will have to be re-synchronised ⇒ page 101. ■

## Changing the battery

If the battery indicator does not flash when the buttons are pushed, the battery must be replaced.

**Caution**

The use of inappropriate batteries may damage the radio frequency remote control. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same size and power.

**For the sake of the environment**

The flat batteries must be thrown away in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. ■

## Synchronising the remote control key

*If it is not possible to unlock or lock the door with the remote control, it should be re-synchronised.*

– Press the 🔓 ⇒ page 100, fig. 63 button on the remote control.

– Then close the vehicle using the key bit **within one minute**.

It is possible that the vehicle could no longer be opened and closed with the remote control if the button 🔓 is repeatedly pressed outside the radio frequency remote control effective scope. The remote control key will have to be resynchronised.

Spare remote control keys are available in your Authorised Service Centres, where they must be matched to the locking system.

Up to eight remote control keys can be used. ■

# Anti-theft alarm system*

## Description of anti-theft alarm system*

*The anti-theft alarm triggers if unauthorised movements are detected around the vehicle.*

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it. Audible and visible alarms are triggered if the car is opened using the key, or if unauthorised access to the vehicle is forced.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically connected on locking the vehicle. The system is then primed.

**When does the system trigger an alarm?**

The system triggers an alarm if the following unauthorised actions are carried out when the car is locked:

- Mechanical opening of the vehicle with the vehicle key
- Opening a door
- Opening the bonnet
- Opening the tailgate
- Switching on the ignition
- Movements in the vehicle
- Undue manipulation of the alarm
- Battery handling

The acoustic signals sound and the indicators flash for approx. 30 seconds. This may be repeated up to 10 times depending on the country.

**Opening the doors mechanically (emergency opening)**

If the remote control function fails, you will have to use the key to unlock the car. This is done as follows:

- Unfold the key by pressing the button shown by the (arrow).
- Use the lock on the driver door to unlock the vehicle. The anti-theft alarm system remains active, but an alarm is not triggered immediately.
- Switch on the ignition within 15 seconds. When the ignition is switched on, the electronic immobiliser recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system. If you do not switch on the ignition within 15 seconds, the alarm is triggered.

**How to switch the alarm off**

When the vehicle is unlocked via the unlocking button of the remote control or when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

**Note**

- If, after the alarm goes off, access is gained to a second secured zone (e.g. the tailgate is opened after a door has been opened), the warning signal is triggered again.
- Vehicle monitoring remains active even if the battery is disconnected or not working for any reason.
- The alarm is triggered immediately if one of the battery cables is disconnected while the alarm system is active. ■

## Volumetric sensor*

*Monitoring or control function incorporated in the anti-theft alarm* which detects unauthorized vehicle entry by means of ultrasound.*

The system consists of 3 sensors, 2 emitters and a receptor. ▶

### Activation

– It is automatically turned on with the anti-theft alarm, when the vehicle is locked mechanically with the key and when the button on the remote control is used.

### Deactivation

– Press the button on the remote control twice. Only the volumetric sensor is deactivated. The alarm system remains activated.

**WARNING**

- **The “safe” security system remains deactivated if the volumetric sensor is deactivated.**
- **For those vehicles in which a separate sunblind is fitted in the passenger compartment, the alarm will not function correctly due to interference with the sensor.**

**Note**

- If the alarm has been triggered by the volumetric sensor, this will be indicated by a flashing of the indicator on the driver's door. This flashing will be different to that for an activated alarm. ■

# Tailgate

## Unlocking and locking

*The operation of the tailgate opening system is electric. It is activated by using the handle on the tailgate*

Fig. 65 Tailgate: opening from the outside

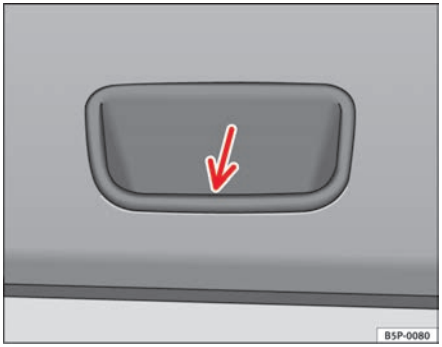


Fig. 66 Detail of the inside of the tailgate: hand grip

### Opening the tailgate

– Pull on the release lever and lift the tailgate ⇒ fig. 65. The tailgate will then open.

### Closing the tailgate

– Grip the tailgate by one of the two handles on the interior lining and close it, using a light movement.

The system may or may not operate depending on the situation of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is locked then it cannot be opened, however if it is unlocked then the opening system is operative and the boot may be opened.

To the locking / unlocking status, press the button or the button 1 on the remote control key.

A warning appears in the instrument panel if the tailgate is open or not properly closed.* An audible warning is also given if the tailgate is opened while the vehicle is moving faster than 6 km/h.*

**WARNING**

- **Always close the tailgate properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **The tailgate must not be opened when the reverse or rear fog lights are lit. This may damage the lighting units.**
- **Do not close the tailgate by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the tailgate is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **If the tailgate is not fully closed, open it with the handle and close it again correctly. Do not try to close it by pressing on the surface of the tailgate, as this may damage the surface.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Closing the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear could cause serious injury to you and to third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of the tailgate.**
- **Never drive with the tailgate open or half-closed, exhaust gases may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **If you only open the tailgate, do not leave the key inside. The vehicle will not be opened if the key is left inside.** ■

## Emergency opening

*This allows the vehicle to be opened if the central locking does not operate (for example, if the battery is flat)*

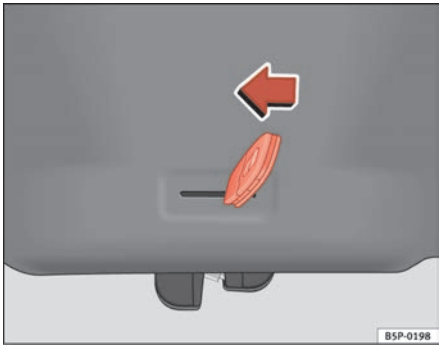


**Fig. 67 Tailgate: emergency open**

There is a groove in the boot allowing access to the emergency opening mechanism.

### Opening the tailgate from inside the luggage compartment

– Insert the key bit in the groove and unlock the locking system, turning the key from right to left, as shown by the arrow ⇒ fig. 67. ■

# Windows

## Opening or closing the windows electrically

*The front and rear electric windows can be operated by using the controls on the driver's door.*

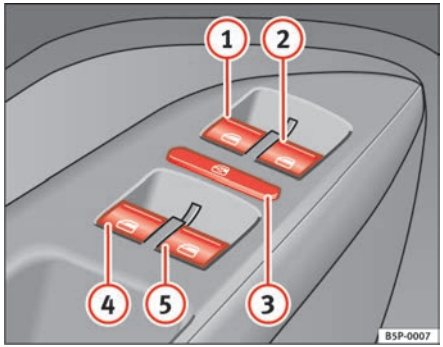


Fig. 68 Detail of driver door: controls for the front and rear windows

### Opening and closing the windows

– Press the button to open a window.

– Pull button to close a window ⇒ ⚠.

Always close the windows fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

You can use the electric windows for approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver door nor the front passenger door has been opened and the key has not been removed from the ignition.

**Buttons on the driver's door**

1. Button for window in front left door
2. Button for window in front right door

**Buttons for rear windows***

3. Safety switch for deactivating the electric window buttons in the rear doors
4. Button for window in rear left door
5. Button for window in rear right door

**Safety switch ***

Safety switch 3 on the driver's door can be used to disable the electric window buttons in the rear doors.

Safety switch not pressed: buttons on rear doors are activated.

Safety switch pressed: buttons on rear doors are deactivated.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle, particularly if they have access to the keys. An uncontrolled use of the key could start the engine or activate any electric equipment(e.g. electric windows), causing risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could make the aid difficult in an emergency situation.**
- **The electric windows will work until the key has been removed from the ignition and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **If necessary, use the safety switch to disable the rear electric windows. Make sure that they have been disabled.**

**Note**

If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will automatically open again ⇒ page 107. If this happens, check why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again. ■

## One-touch opening and closing

*One-touch opening and closing means you do not have to hold down the button.*

### One-touch closing

– Pull up the window button briefly up to the second position. The window closes fully.

### One-touch opening

– Push down the window button briefly up to the second position. The window opens fully.

### Restoring one-touch opening and closing

– Close all windows.

– Use the key to lock the vehicle from outside and hold the key in the lock position for at least one second. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

The buttons ⇒ page 106, fig. 68 (1) and (2) have two levels for opening the window and two for closing it. This makes it easier to open and close windows to the desired position.

One-touch closing does not work when the ignition has been switched off, even if the key is in the ignition.

The automatic open and close function will not work if the battery has been temporarily disconnected, or if the battery is flat. The function then has to be reactivated.

The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ■

## Roll-back function

*The windows have a roll-back function. This reduces the risk of injuries when the windows are closing.*

- If a window is obstructed when closing automatically, the window stops at this point and lowers immediately ⇒ ⚠.
- If this happens, check immediately (within 10 seconds) why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again. After 10 seconds the normal automatic function resumes.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window will stop at this point.
- If there is no obvious reason why the window cannot be closed, try to close it again within five seconds.

If you wait longer than 5 - 10 seconds, the window will open fully when you operate one of the buttons. One-touch closing is reactivated.

The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Contact an Authorised Service Centre.

**WARNING**

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle, even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Please ensure that children are never left alone inside the vehicle.**
- **The electric windows will work until the key has been removed from the ignition and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Never allow people to remain in the vehicle when you close the vehicle from the outside. The windows cannot be opened even in an emergency.**

**Note**

The roll-back function is deactivated if the windows are closed from the outside of the vehicle using the ignition key for convenience closing ⇒ page 108. ■

## Convenience opening and closing*

### Using the door lock

– Hold the key in the door lock of the driver door in either the locking or the unlocking position until all windows are either opened or closed.

– Release the key to interrupt this function.

### Using the remote control

– Push the lock button on the remote control for about 3 seconds. All windows which function electrically will be either opened or closed.

– Press the unlock button to interrupt the function.

– Once the windows are completely closed, the indicators will flash. ■

# Sliding/tilting roof*

## Opening and closing the sliding/tilting roof

*The sliding/tilting sunroof is opened and closed using the rotary button when the ignition is switched on.*

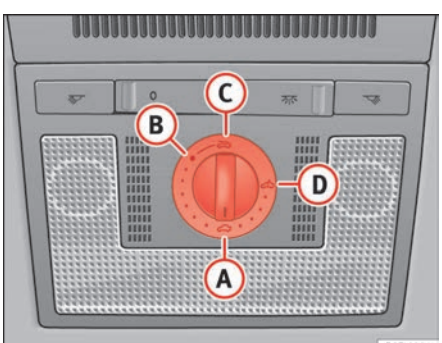


**Fig. 69 Roof lining description: rotary sun roof control / deflector**

### Closing the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (A) ⇒ fig. 69 ⇒ ⚠.

### Opening/tilting the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (B). The sunroof opens to the convenience position where wind noise is reduced.

– To open the roof further, turn the switch to position (C) and hold the switch in this position until the roof opens to the desired position.

### Tilting the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (D).

Always close the sliding/tilting roof fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

The sliding/tilting sunroof can be operated for up to about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.

#### Sunroof blind

The sunroof blind is opened together with the sliding/tilting roof. If required, it can be closed by hand when the sunroof is closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Incorrect use of the sliding/tilting sunroof can result in injury.**
- **Never close the sliding/tilting sunroof without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of the sliding/tilting sunroof.**
- **Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING (continued)**

- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle, particularly if they have access to the keys. Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric sliding/tilting sunroof). Risk of accident! The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could make the aid difficult in an emergency situation.**
- **The sliding/tilting sunroof continues to function until one of the front doors is opened and the key removed from the ignition.** ■

## Convenience closing*

### Using the door lock

– Hold the key in the door lock of the driver's door in the locking position until the sliding/tilting sunroof is closed.

– Release the key to interrupt this function.

### Using the remote control

– Push the lock button on the remote control for about 3 seconds. The sliding/tilting sunroof is closed.

– Release the unlock button to interrupt the function.

– When the sliding/tilting sunroof has closed completely, the indicators flash once. ▶

**Note**

The sliding/tilting sunroof rotary button remains in the last position selected if the roof is closed using convenience closing from outside the vehicle and will have to be re-positioned the next time you drive. ■

## Roll-back function of the sliding/tilting roof*

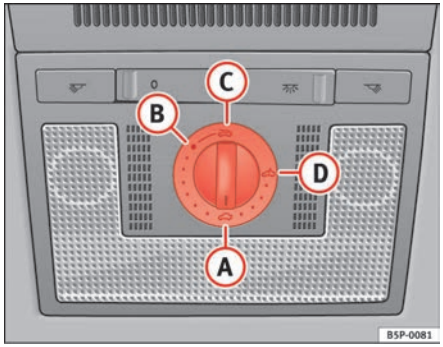


Fig. 70 Roof lining description: rotary sun roof control / deflector

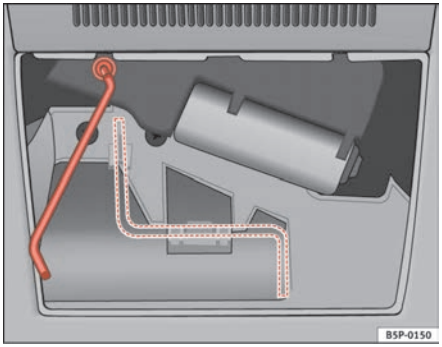


Fig. 71 Emergency closing handle

The sliding/tilting roof has a *roll-back function* which prevents larger objects getting trapped when the roof is closed. The roll-back function does not prevent fingers getting pinched against the roof opening. The sliding/tilting sunroof stops and opens again immediately if it is obstructed when closing.

If the sliding/tilting roof has been opened again by the roll-back function, it can be closed only by pressing the rotary button at the front in position (A) ⇒ fig. 70 until the sliding/tilting roof has closed fully. **Please note that the sunroof will now close without the roll-back function.**

### Operation in the event of a breakdown

In case of a breakdown, the sunroof can be closed manually.

- Remove the plastic cover by inserting a screwdriver in the rear section.
- Remove the lever from the cover fastening, insert it in the opening as far as possible (pushing against the spring) and close the sliding roof.
- Fit the lever back into position. ■

# Lights and visibility

## Lights

### Switching lights on and off

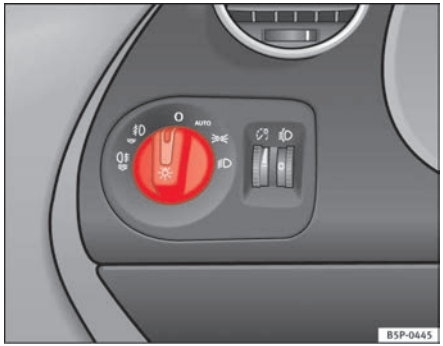


Fig. 72 Detailed view of instrument panel: lights, fog light and rear fog light control

**Switching on the side lights**

– Turn the light switch ⇒ fig. 72 to position ≣D.

**Switching on dipped headlights**

– Turn the light switch to position ≣D.

**Switching off the lights**

– Turn the light switch to position 0.

**Switching on the fog lights***

– Pull the switch out of position ≣D or ≣D to the first stop. The symbol ≣D in the light switch lights up.

**Switching on the rear fog lights (vehicles with front fog lights)**

– Pull the switch out of position ≣D or ≣D to the second stop ⇒ ⚠. A warning lamp lights up in the control panel.

**Switching on the rear fog lights (vehicles with no front fog lights)**

– Pull the light switch from position ≣D to the last stop. A warning lamp lights up in the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never drive with just the side lights on. Risk of accident. The side lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. Always use your dipped headlights if it is dark or if visibility is poor.**

**Note**

- The dipped beam headlights will only work with the ignition on. The side lights come on automatically when the ignition is turned off.
- If the lights are left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, a buzzer will sound while the driver door remains open. This is a reminder to switch the lights off.

- The rear fog light is so bright that it can dazzle drivers behind you. You should use the rear fog light only when visibility is very poor.
- If you are towing a trailer equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a factory-fitted *towing bracket*, the rear fog light on the car will automatically be switched off.
- The use of the lighting described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.
- Depending on weather conditions (very cold or wet), the front and rear lights and the indicators may be temporarily misted. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the lighting system. The lights will soon demist when they are switched on. ■

## Automatic lighting*

Fig. 73 Automatic lighting

### Activation

– Rotate the switch to the position “Auto”, this indication will light up.

### Deactivation

– Turn the light switch to 0.

#### Automatic lighting

If automatic headlight control is switched on, dipped headlights are automatically switched on by a light-sensitive sensor if you drive into a tunnel, for example.

The motorway function switches on the dipped headlights when the vehicle is driven at over 140 km/h for a few seconds and it switches the lights off when the vehicle is driven at less than 65 km/h for a few minutes.

The rain sensor switches on the dipped headlights when the windscreen wipers have been operating continuously for a few seconds and it switches the lights off when the continuous or intermittent wipe is switched off for some minutes ⇒ page 125.

When the automatic dipped light control is connected but the dipped lights are off, the warning lamp **AUTO** lights up on the light control ⇒ fig. 73. If the automatic control switches on the dipped lights, the instrument and control lighting is also switched on.

**WARNING**

- **If automatic headlight control is switched on, the headlights will not be switched on in fog or heavy rain. Therefore, the dipped beam must be switched on manually.**

**Note**

- For those vehicles with the automatic headlight system, when the key is removed from the ignition, the acoustic signal will only sound if the light control is in the position ≋ or ≋ if the vehicle is not fitted with the coming home function. ▶

- If the daylight driving automatic light function is switched on, the fog lights or rear fog light cannot be switched on in addition.
- The use of the lighting described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.
- Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the sensor. This may cause disruptions or faults in the automatic lighting system.
- To avoid damage to the tail lights, the lights mounted on the tailgate go off when the tailgate is opened (according to country). ■

## Daytime lights*

*The daytime light reduces the risk of accidents by increasing the visibility of the vehicle. The daytime running lights are enabled automatically when the ignition is switched on. It is automatically switched off when the side lights are turned on.*

### Daytime lights (halogen lamps)[18)]

The daytime lights increase road safety in vehicles fitted with halogen lamps. These include the dipped, side and registration plate lights.

The daytime lights are switched on each time the ignition is turned on if the light setting is in position **0** or **AUTO**. Depending upon the model, a control lamp on the light control switch or the lighting up of the instrument panel will indicate that the daytime lighting is on.

It is not possible for the driver to switch the daytime lights on or off. Please contact a qualified workshop if you wish to deactivate the lights.

### Daytime lights (bi-xenon lamps)

The daytime lights increase road safety in vehicles fitted with bi-xenon lamps. The lights are built-in separately to the headlights and are switched on each time the ignition is turned on if the light setting is in position **0** or **AUTO**.

### Automatic control of the dipped light in combination with the daytime lighting (bi-xenon headlamps)

If the *dipped light control* and the *daytime lighting* are activated at the same time, the dipped lights and the instrument panel lighting will automatically come on as required (e.g. on entering a tunnel) and the daytime lights will go off. When the automatic dipped light control switches off the dipped lights (e.g. on coming out of the tunnel), the daytime lights come back on.

### Activating/deactivating the daytime lights*

In vehicles with daytime lights* combined with bi-xenon headlamps, these lights may be activated or deactivated with the indicator and main beam lever. In vehicles with daytime lights combined with halogen lamps, this function can only be activated or deactivated in a specialist workshop.

### Deactivating daytime lights (bi-xenon lamps)

With the ignition switched off, move the indicator and main beam lever upwards and back (left indicator and headlamp flash).

Switch on the ignition for 3 seconds. The daytime lights are deactivated and can not be switched on.

### Activating daytime lights (bi-xenon lamps)

With the ignition switched off, move the indicator and main beam lever upwards and back (left indicator and headlamp flash).

Switch on the ignition for 3 seconds. The daytime lights are activated and can be switched on. ▶

[18)] It is only available in some countries or as an optional extra

**Note**

Please observe any relevant legal requirements which may apply in your country. ■

## Coming home / leaving home function*

*The Coming Home function is controlled manually. The Leaving Home function is controlled with a photo sensor.*

If the Coming Home or Leaving Home function is connected, the front side and dipped lights, the tail lights and the registration plate light will light up to provide assistance.

**Coming home function**

The Coming Home function is activated by switching off the ignition and briefly flashing the lights. When the driver's door is opened, the Coming Home lighting comes on. If the driver's door is already open when the lights are flashed briefly, the Coming Home lighting comes on **immediately**.

When the last door of the vehicle or the tailgate is closed, the Coming Home function starts and the switching off the headlights is delayed.

The Coming Home lighting switches off in the following cases:

- On completion of the time period established for the delay in switching off the lights after all the vehicle doors and the tailgate have been closed.
- If, 30 seconds after being connected, any doors or the tailgate remain open.
- If the light switch is turned to position **0**.
- If the ignition is switched on.

**Leaving home function**

The Leaving Home function is activated when the vehicle is unlocked if:

- the light control is in position **AUTO** and
- the photosensor detects “darkness”.

The Leaving Home lighting switches off in the following cases:

- If the time period for the delay in switching off the headlamps has ended
- If the vehicle is locked again.
- If the light switch is turned to position **0**.
- If the ignition is switched on.

**Note**

The setting for the delay in switching off the headlamps in the Coming Home and Leaving Home function can be changed or the function can be connected or disconnected in the menu **Lights and visibility** ⇒ page 74.

- If the ignition key is removed while the lights are on, and the lights are flashed briefly and the driver's door opened, **no** acoustic signal is heard, as when the Coming Home function is on, the lights are automatically switched off after a period of time (except when the light switch is in position ≣D or ≣D. ■

## Instrument and switch lighting / Headlight range control

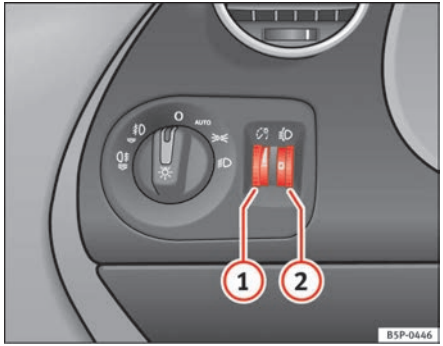


Fig. 74 Instrument panel: regulation for instrument and switch illumination and headlight range control

**Instrument and switch lighting** (1)

When the headlights are switched on, the brightness of the instruments and switch lighting can be regulated to suit your requirements by turning the thumb wheel ⇒ fig. 74 (1).

Those vehicles fitted with xenon gas discharge headlights are fitted with an automatic headlight range system.

**Headlight range control** (2)

By using the electrical headlight range control, (2) you can adjust the headlight range to the load level that is being carried in the vehicle. This way, it is possible to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic more than necessary. At the same time, by using the correct headlight settings, the driver has the best possible lighting for the road ahead.

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam is switched on. To lower the beam, turn the thumb wheel down (2) from the basic setting **0**.

**Dynamic headlight range control**

Vehicles with **gas discharge lamps** ("xenon lamps") are equipped with **dynamic headlight range control**. This means that the headlights will be adjusted to suit the load level of the vehicle and "nodding movements" when pulling off and braking are automatically compensated for.

Vehicles with gas discharge lamps do not have headlight range control. ■

## Self directional headlights*

*When driving around bends, the headlights will light the most important areas of the road.*

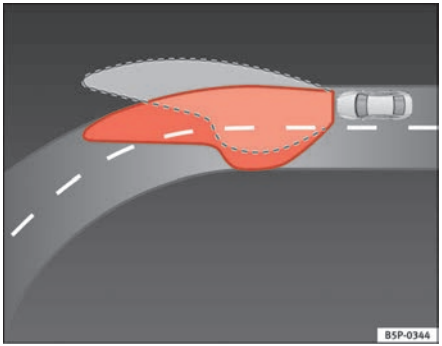


Fig. 75 Cornering lighting using self-directional headlights

**Dynamic curve lights* (AFS)**

The **dynamic curve lights** only operate if the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h and the dipped headlamps are on. When taking a bend, the road is illuminated better with directional gas discharge lamps than with conventional fixed headlamps. ▶

A fault in the system is indicated via the flashing of the control lamp on the instrument panel. At the same time, a text message with information or instructions to perform necessary operations may appear on the instrument panel display. Take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the fault repaired.

If the control lamp lights up on the instrument panel but all the lamps are operating correctly, there may still be a fault in the dynamic curve lighting system (AFS). Take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the fault repaired.

**WARNING**

**If the "automatic dipped light control" is switched on, the dipped headlights will not be switched on in fog. They should be switched on manually using the light switch. The driver is personally responsible for the correct use of lights in all situations. "Automatic headlight control" is merely a system to support the driver. Where necessary, switch on the lights manually using the light switch.** ■

## Turning light*

When the indicator is switched on to turn or on very tight bends, the right or left fog lamp automatically comes on to function as a **turning light**. The turning light only operates if the dipped lights are on.

**WARNING**

**If the "automatic dipped light control" is switched on, the dipped headlights will not be switched on in fog. They should be switched on manually using the light switch. The driver is personally responsible for the correct use of lights in all situations. "Automatic headlight control" is merely a system to support the driver. Where necessary, switch on the lights manually using the light switch.** ■

## Hazard warning lights

*The hazard warning lights are used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle in emergencies.*

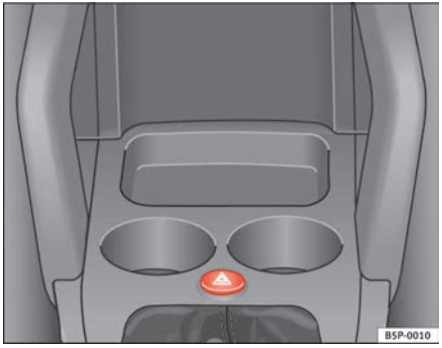


**Fig. 76 Instrument panel: switch for hazard warning lights**

If your vehicle breaks down:

1. Park your vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.

2. Press the button to switch on the hazard warning lights ⇒ ⚠.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Apply the handbrake.
5. On a manual gearbox engage 1st gear, and for an automatic move the selector lever to **P**.
6. Use the warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
7. Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.

You should switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users, for instance when:

- reaching the tail end of a traffic jam,
- there is an emergency,
- your vehicle breaks down due to a technical fault,
- you are towing another vehicle or your vehicle is being towed.

All turn signals flash simultaneously when the hazard warning lights are switched on. That is that the two turn signal indicator lamps ⇦ ⇨ and the indicator lamp in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

**Emergency braking function**

When the vehicle detects sudden braking, the hazard warning lights automatically come on to warn vehicles behind. The hazard warning lights go off when the vehicle accelerates or the hazard warning light switch is pressed.

**WARNING**

- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Always use the hazard warning lights and a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle.**
- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with inflammable materials under the vehicle, for example dry grass or spilt petrol. This could start a fire!**

**Note**

- The battery will run down if the hazard warning lights are left on for a long time, even if the ignition is switched off.
- The use of the hazard warning lights described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements. ■

## Indicator and main beam headlight lever

*The turn signal and main beam lever also operates the parking lights and the headlight flasher.*

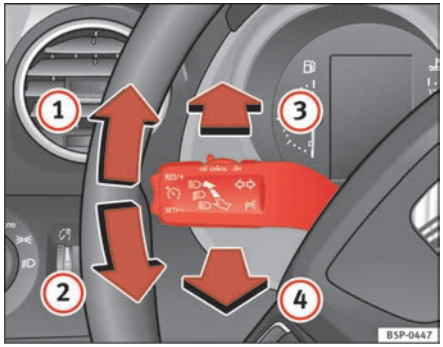


**Fig. 77 Indicator and main beam headlight lever**

The turn signal and main beam headlight lever has the following functions:

### Switching on the turn signals

– Move the lever all the way up ⇒ page 118, fig. 77 (1) to indicate **right**, and all the way down (2) to indicate **left**.

### Signalling a lane change

– Push the lever up (1) or down (2) to the point where you incur resistance and then release it. The turn signal will flash several times. The corresponding warning lamp will also flash.

### Switching main beam on and off

– Turn the light switch to position ≡D.

– Press the lever forward ⇒ page 118, fig. 77 (3) to switch on the main beams.

– Pull the lever back towards you to switch the main beam headlights off again.

### Headlight flashers

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (4) to operate the flasher.

### Switching on parking lights

– Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the lock.

– Move the lever up or down to turn the right or left-hand parking lights on, respectively.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.**

**Note**

- The *turn signals* only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the instrument panel. The warning lamp ⇦⇨ flashes when the turn signals are operated, provided a trailer is correctly attached and connected to the vehicle. If a turn signal bulb is defective, the warning lamp flashes at double speed. If the trailer turn signal bulbs are damaged, warning lamp ⇦⇨ does not light up. Change the bulb.

- The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the combi-instrument.
- The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever – even if no other lights are switched on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the combi-instrument.
- When the *parking lights* are switched on, the headlight and the rear light on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The parking lights will only work if the key is removed from the ignition. If the lights are switched on, a **buzzer** gives an audible warning while the driver door is open.
- If the turn signal lever is left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, an acoustic signal sounds when the driver door is opened. This is a reminder to switch off the turn signal, unless of course you wish to leave the parking light on. ■

# Interior lights

## Front interior light type 1

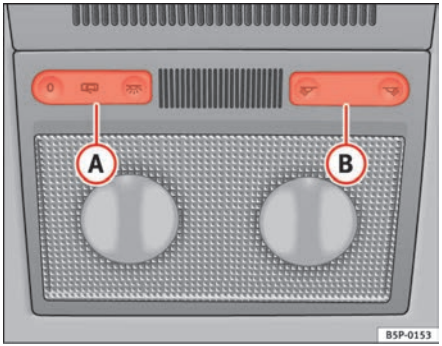


**Fig. 78 Interior roof trim: front interior lights**

The switch (A) ⇒ fig. 78 is used to select the following positions:

**Courtesy light position**

Rocker switch in flat position (not activated). The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock And turn off approx. 20 seconds after closing the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

**Interior light switched on**

Push the switch to the position .

**Interior light switched off O**

Push the switch to position O ⇒ fig. 78.

**Note**

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery from discharging. ■

## Front interior light type 2

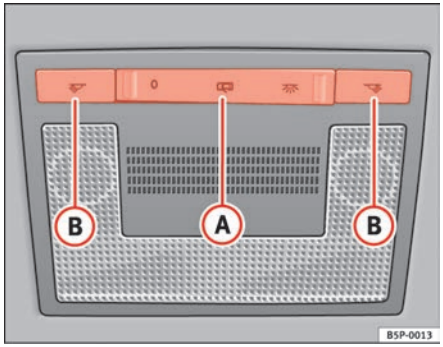


**Fig. 79 Interior roof trim: front interior lights**

The switch (A) ⇒ fig. 79 is used to select the following positions:

**Courtesy light position**

Rocker switch in flat position (not activated). The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock And turn off approx. 20 seconds after closing the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

**Interior light switched on**

Push the switch to the position .

**Interior light switched off O**

Push the switch to position O ⇒ page 120, fig. 79.

**Note**

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery from discharging. ■

## Front reading lights

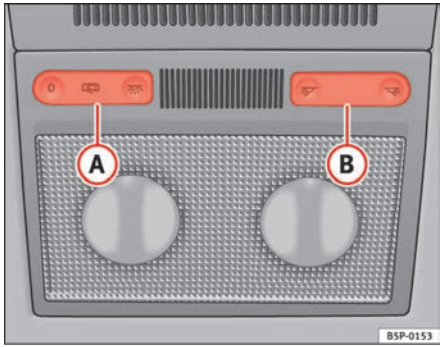


Fig. 80 Interior roof trim: front reading lights, type 1

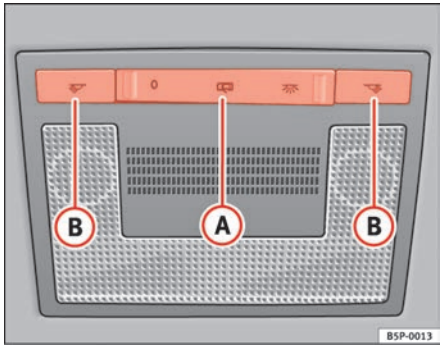


Fig. 81 Interior roof trim: front reading lights, type 2

**Switching on the reading light**

Press the corresponding button ⇒ fig. 80 (B) and ⇒ fig. 81 (B) to switch on the reading light.

**Switching the reading lights off**

Press the corresponding button to switch the reading light off. ■

## Rear interior and reading lights*

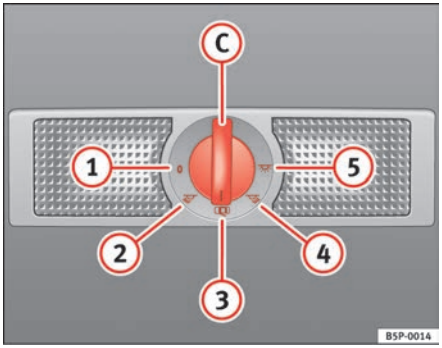


Fig. 82 Interior roof trim: rear interior lights and reading lights.

The switch ⇒ fig. 82 (C) is used to select the following positions:

**Interior light switched off 0**

In switch position ⇒ fig. 82 (1), the interior and reading lights are switched off.

**Switching on the reading light**

Turn the switch to position (2) (left reading light) or to position (4) (right reading light).

**Courtesy light position**

Turn the control to position (3). The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock The ▶

light turns off about 20 seconds after closing the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

**Interior lights or both reading lights switched on**

Turn the control to position (5).

**Note**

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery from discharging. ■

# Visibility

## Sun visors

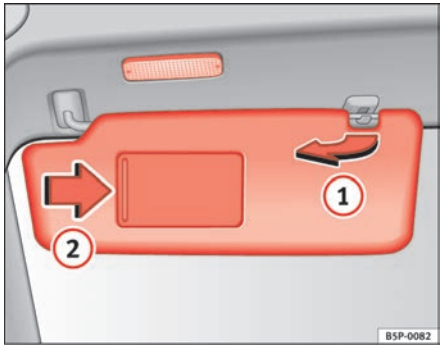


Fig. 83 Sun visor on the driver side

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their mountings in the centre of the vehicle and turned towards the doors ⇒ fig. 83 (1).

The make-up mirrors in the sun visors have covers. When you open the cover (2), a lamp in the roof lights up.

The lamp* in the roof lining will go out when the vanity mirror cover is pushed back or the sun visor is pushed back up.

**Note**

The roof lamp will turn off about 10 minutes following the removal of the ignition key. This prevents the battery from discharging. ■

## Sun visor*

*The windows on the rear doors are fitted with a sun visor*

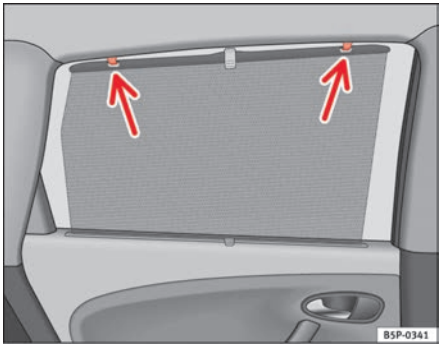


Fig. 84 Rear door sun visor

▶

### Sun visors on the rear side windows*

– Pull out the visor and hook it onto the hooks at the top of the door frame ⇒ fig. 84. ■

## Windscreen wipers

### Front windscreen wipers

*The windscreen wiper lever controls the windscreen wipers and the automatic wash and wipe.*

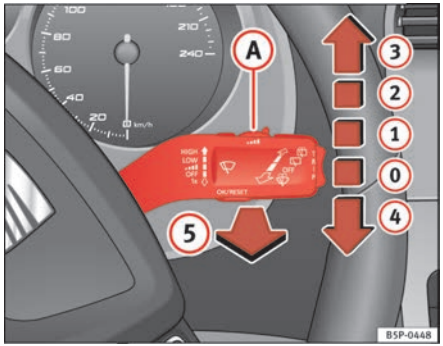


Fig. 85 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever

The windscreen wiper lever ⇒ fig. 85 has the following positions:

### Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever to position (0).

### Intermittent wipe

– Move the lever up to position (1).

– Move the control (A) to the left or right to set the length of the intervals. Control to the left: long intervals; control to the right: short intervals. Four wiper interval stages can be set using switch (A).

### Slow wipe

– Move the lever up to position (2).

### Continuous wipe

– Move the lever up to position (3).

### Brief wipe

– Move the lever down to position (4) to give the windscreen a *brief* wipe. The wiper will start to move faster if you keep the lever pressed down for longer than 2 seconds.

### Wash and wipe automatic system

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel - Position (5). The wash function will start immediately and the wipers will start with a slight delay. The wash and wiper systems will function at the same time at speeds of over 120 km/h.

– Release the lever. The wipers will keep running for approximately four seconds.

#### Optional heated windscreen in the wiper blade* area (page

In some countries and with some versions, there is the possibility of heating the windscreen in the area of the windscreen wiper blades in order to aid de-

icing in the zone. The function is switched on by pressing the rear heating window key.

**WARNING**

- **Worn and dirty wiper blades obstruct visibility and reduce safety levels.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash / wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**
- **Always note the corresponding warnings on ⇒ page 225, "Changing windscreen wiper blades".**

**Caution**

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers for the first time. If you switch on the wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen, you could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.

**Note**

- The windscreen wipers will only work when the ignition is switched on.
- In certain versions of vehicles with alarms, the windscreen wiper will only work when the ignition is on and the bonnet closed.
- When in use, the wipers do not go as far as the rest position. When the lever is moved to position 0, they are totally hidden.
- The next speed down will automatically be selected if speed ⇒ page 123, fig. 85 (2) or (3) is selected when the vehicle stops. The set speed will be resumed when the vehicle starts again.
- The windscreen will be wiped again after approximately five seconds once the "automatic wipe/wash system" has been operated, provided the vehicle is in transit (drip function). If you activate the wipers less than three secionds after the drip function, a new wash sequence will begin without the last wipe. For the "drip" function to work again, you have to turn the ignition off and then on again.
- When the "intermittent wipe function" is on, the intervals are directly proportional to the speed. This way, the higher the vehicle speed the shorter the intervals.
- The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again.
- Before removing any objects that may be trapped in the side areas of the windscreen, always move the wiper arms to the service position (horizontal).
- The heat output of the heated jets is controlled automatically when the ignition is switched on, depending upon the outside temperature. ■

## Rain sensor*

*The rain sensor controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain.*

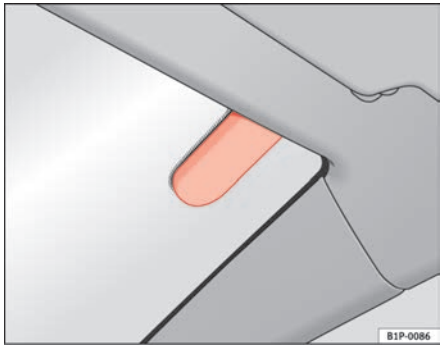


Fig. 86 Rain sensor*

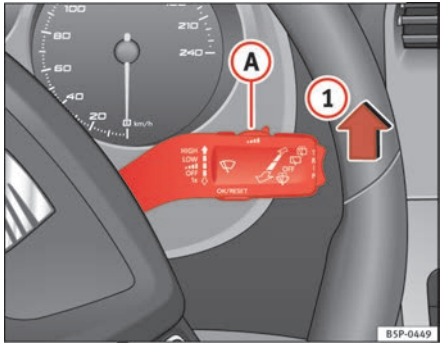


Fig. 87 Windscreen wiper lever

### Switching on the rain sensor

– Move the windscreen wiper lever into position (1) ⇒ fig. 87.

– Move the control (A) to the left or right to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Control to the right: highly sensitive. Control to the left: less sensitive.

The rain sensor is part of the interval wipe function. You will have to switch the rain sensor back on if you switch off the ignition. This is done by switching the wiper intermittent function off and back on.

**Note**

- Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the sensor. This may cause sensor disruption or faults. ■

## Rear window wiper

*The windscreen wiper lever operates the windscreen wiper and the wash and wipe system for the rear window.*

**Fig. 88 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever: rear window wiper**

### Switching on the interval wipe

– Press the lever forwards to position (6) ⇒ fig. 88. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.

### Switching off the interval wipe function

– Pull the lever back from position (6) towards the steering wheel. The wiper will continue to function for a short period if you switch off whilst the wipers are in motion.

### Switching on the windscreen wiper and washer system

– Press the lever fully forwards to position (7) ⇒ fig. 88. The wash function will start immediately and the wiper will start with a slight delay. The windscreen wash system will function as long as you hold the lever in this position.

– Release the lever. The wiper then wipes for approximately 4 seconds, and then in intervals again.

– Release the lever. The washer system stops and the wipers function.

**WARNING**

- **Worn and dirty wiper blades obstruct visibility and reduce safety levels.**
- **Always note the corresponding warnings on ⇒ page 225, “Changing windscreen wiper blades”.**

**Caution**

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blade is not frozen to the glass before using the wiper for the first time. If you switch on the wiper when the wiper blade is frozen to the glass, this could damage both the wiper blade and the wiper motor.

**Note**

- The windscreen wiper will only function when the ignition is switched on and the tailgate is closed.
- In reverse gear, with the windscreen wipers switched on, the rear windscreen wiper will make one wipe. ■

## Headlight washer system

*The headlight washers clean the headlight lenses.*

The headlight washers are activated automatically when the windscreen washer is used and the windscreen wiper lever is pulled towards the steering wheel for at least 1.5 seconds – provided the dipped headlights or main beams are switched on. Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the fuel tank.

**Note**

- To ensure that the headlight washers work properly in winter, keep the nozzle holders in the bumper free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray.
- To remove water, the windscreen wipers will be activated from time to time, the headlight wipers will be activated every three cycles. ■

# Mirrors

## Interior mirror

*It is dangerous to drive if you cannot see clearly through the rear window.*

**Manual anti-dazzle function for interior mirror**

In the basic mirror position, the lever at the bottom edge of the mirror should be at the front. Pull the lever to the back to select the anti-dazzle function. ■

## Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*

*The automatic anti-dazzle function can be switched on and off as desired.*

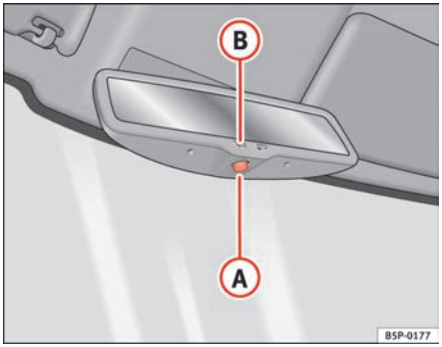


Fig. 89 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

**Switching off anti-dazzle function**

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 89. Warning lamp (B) goes out.

**Switching on anti-dazzle function**

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 89. Warning lamp is lit.

**Anti-dazzle function**

The anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on. The green indicator lamp lights up in the mirror housing.

When the anti-dazzle function is activated the interior mirror will darken **automatically** according to the amount of light it receives (for example from the headlights of a vehicle behind). The anti-dazzle function is cancelled if reverse gear is engaged. ▶

**Note**

- The automatic anti-dazzle function will only work properly if the sun blind* for the rear window is retracted and there are no other objects preventing light from reaching the interior mirror.
- If you have to stick any type of sticker on the windscreen, do not do so in front of the sensors. Doing so could prevent the anti-dazzle function from working well or even from working at all. ■

## Exterior mirrors

*The exterior mirrors can be adjusted using the rotary knob in the centre console.*

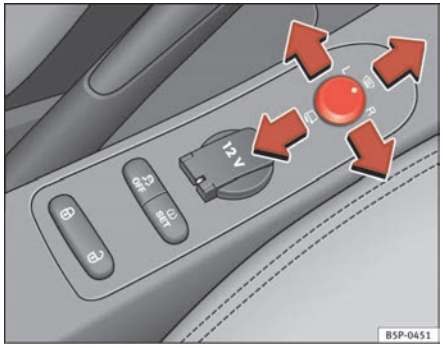


Fig. 90 Controls of exterior mirrors

### Basic setting of exterior mirrors

1. Turn knob ⇒ fig. 90 to position **L** (**left exterior mirror**).
2. Turn the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.
3. Turn knob to position **R** (**right exterior mirror**).
4. Swivel the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the car ⇒ ⚠.

### Heating the exterior mirrors*

– Turn the knob forwards to the central position ⇒ fig. 90 (1) so that the heated rear view mirrors warm up and the heated windscreen* in the wiper blade rest area is activated ⇒ page 123.

– The wing mirror heating is not activated in temperatures above approximately 20°C.

### Folding in exterior mirrors*

– Turn the control ⇒ fig. 90 to position to fold in the exterior mirrors. You should always fold in the exterior mirrors if you are driving through an automatic car wash. This will help prevent damage.

### Folding rear view mirrors with convenience control*

– The outer rear view mirror will fold back automatically with convenience closing (with the remote or the key).

– To unfold it again, open the door and use the contact.

### Folding exterior mirrors back out to the extended position*

– Turn the knob to another position to fold the exterior mirrors back out ⇒ ⚠. ▶

### Synchronised mirror adjustment

1. Turn the control to the position **L** (**left exterior mirror**).
2. Turn the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle. The **right exterior mirror** will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).

**WARNING**

- **The rear view convex or aspheric mirror increase the field of vision however the objects appear smaller and further away in the mirrors. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could make a mistake. Risk of accident.**
- **If possible, use the interior mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**
- **Make sure that you do not get your finger trapped between the mirror and the mirror base when folding back the mirrors. Risk of injury!**

**For the sake of the environment**

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Otherwise, it is an unnecessary fuel waste.

**Note**

- If the electrical adjustment ever fails to operate, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.
- In vehicles with electric wing mirrors, the following points should be observed: if, due to an external force (e.g. a knock while manoeuvring), the adjustment of the mirror housing is altered, the mirror will have to be completely folded **electrically**. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- The rear view mirrors can be adjusted separately or simultaneously, as described before.
- The wing mirrors folding function does not activate with speeds higher than 40 km/h. ■

# Seats and stowage

## The importance of correct seat adjustment

*Proper seat adjustment optimises the level of protection offered by seat belts and airbags.*

Your vehicle has **five** seats, two on the front part and three on the rear part. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

The driver seat and the front passenger seat can be adjusted in many ways to suit the physical requirements of the vehicle occupants. The correct seat position is very important for:

- a fast and easy operation of all controls on the instrument panel,
- a relaxed posture which does not cause drowsiness,
- a safe driving ⇒ page 7,
- ensuring that the seat belts and airbag system provide maximum protection ⇒ page 19.

**WARNING**

- **If the driver and passengers assume improper sitting positions, they may sustain critical injuries.**
- **More people than available seats must never be transported in your vehicle.**
- **Every passenger in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.**
- **The front seats and all head restraints must always be adjusted to body size and the seat belt must always be properly adjusted to provide you and your passengers with optimum protection.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always keep your feet on the foot well when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out of the window or on the seat. This is also applied to passengers. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Failure to respect the minimum distance means that the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury. The distance between the driver and the steering wheel or between the front passenger and the dash panel should always be as great as possible.**
- **Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary. This also applies to the forwards/backwards adjustment of the rear seats. Otherwise, your seat could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. This could increase the risk of an accident and therefore, injury. In addition, while adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of fatal accidents.**
- **Special guidelines apply to installing a child seat on the front passenger seat. When installing a child seat, observe the warning note in the ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.** ■

# Head restraints

## Correct adjustment of head restraints

*Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passengers protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.*

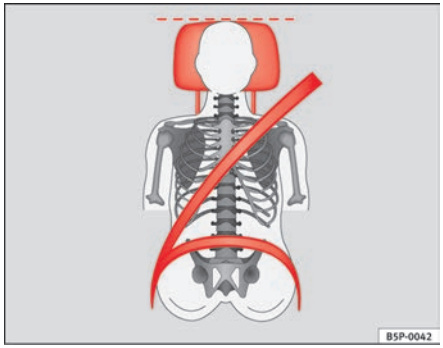


**Fig. 91 Front view: head restraints and seat belts correctly adjusted**

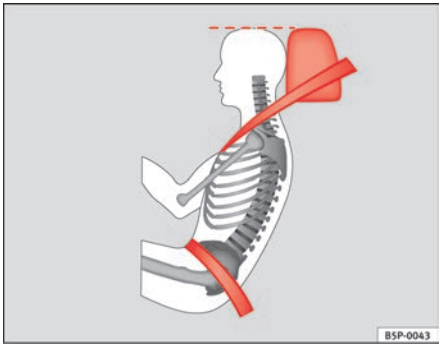


**Fig. 92 Side view: head restraints and seat belts correctly adjusted**

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, at minimum, at eye level ⇒ fig. 91 and ⇒ fig. 92.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒ page 132

**WARNING**

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Improperly adjusted head restraints could lead to death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the passenger's height.** ■

## Removing or adjusting head restraints

*The head restraints can be adjusted by moving them up and down.*

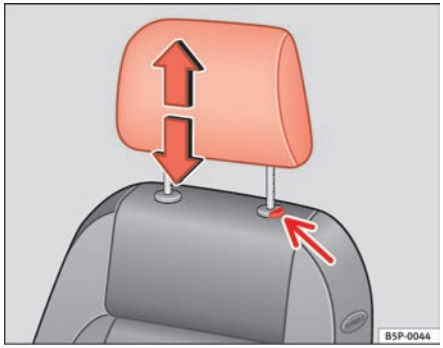


**Fig. 93 Adjusting and removing the head restraints**

### Adjusting height (front seats)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards to the desired position.

– To lower the head restraint, press the button and push head restraint downwards.

– Make sure that it engages securely into position.

### Adjusting height (rear seats)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards to the desired position.

– To lower the head restraint, press the button and push head restraint downwards.

– Make sure that the head restraint engages securely in one of its positions ⇒ page 14.

### Angle adjustment (front seats)

– Press the head restraint forward or back to the required position.

### Removing the head restraint

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 93 (arrow).

– Pull head restraint out of fitting without releasing the button.

### Fitting the head restraint

– Insert the head restraint into the guides on the rear backrest.

– Push head restraint down.

– Adjust the head restraint to suit body size ⇒ page 14 and ⇒ page 13.

**WARNING**

- **Never drive if the head restraints have been removed. Risk of injury.**
- **Never drive if the head restraints are in an unsuitable position, there is a risk of serious injury.**
- **After refitting the head restraint, you must always adjust it properly for height to achieve optimal protection.**
- **Please observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 131, “Correct adjustment of head restraints”.** ■

# Front seats

## Adjustment of the front seats

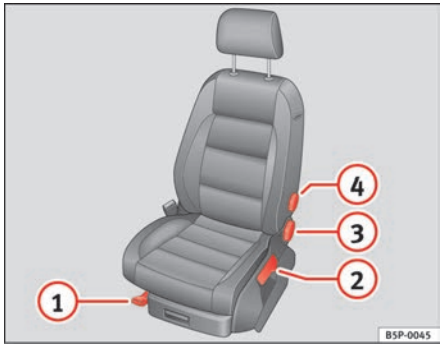


Fig. 94 Front left seat controls

The control elements in ⇒ fig. 94 are mirrored for the front right-hand seat.

### (1) Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

– Pull up the grip and move the seat forwards or backwards.

– Then release the grip (1) and move the seat further until the catch engages.

### (2) Adjusting the seat height*

– Pull the lever up or push down (several times if necessary) from its home position. This adjusts the seat height in stages.

### (3) Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the hand wheel.

### (4) Adjusting the lumbar support*

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the hand wheel to adjust the lumbar support.

The backrest curvature of the cushioned area is determined by the settings made in the lumbar region. This supports the natural curvature of the spine very effectively.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the driver or front passenger seat while the vehicle is in motion. While adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of fatal accidents. Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver and front passenger in case of a sudden braking or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted towards the rear. The maximum protection of the seat belt can be achieved only when the backrests are in an upright position and the driver and front passenger have properly adjusted their seat belts. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to improper positioning of the belt web!**
- **Exercise caution when securing the seat height into forwards/backwards position. Injuries can be caused if the backrest is tilted without due care and attention.** ■

## Heated seats*

*The front seat cushions and backrests can be heated electrically.*

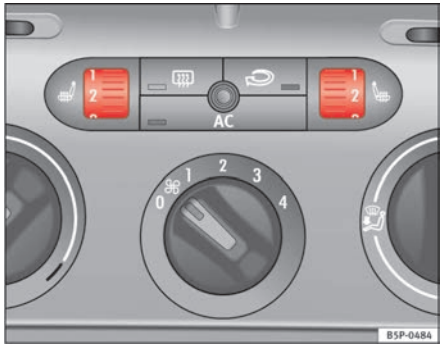


Fig. 95 Thumb wheel for the front seat heating

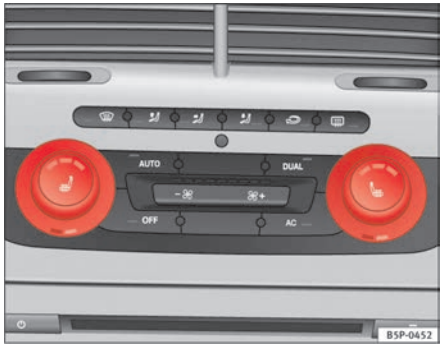


Fig. 96 Front seat heating with Climatronic

### Front seat heating for vehicles without Climatronic

– Turn the appropriate thumb wheel ⇒ fig. 95 to switch on the seat heating. The seat heating is switched off in the **0** position.

### Front seat heating for vehicles with Climatronic

– Press button (A) to switch on the seat heating.

– Press once to set seat heating at maximum level (level 3).

– Press twice to set seat heating at medium level (level 2).

– Press three times to set seat heating at minimum level (level 1).

– When the button is pressed four times, the heating goes off and the LED goes out (level 0).

The seat heating only works when the ignition is switched on. The left thumb wheel controls the left seat and the right thumb wheel the right seat.

**Caution**

To avoid damaging the heating elements, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest. ■

# Rear seat bench

## Seat adjustment

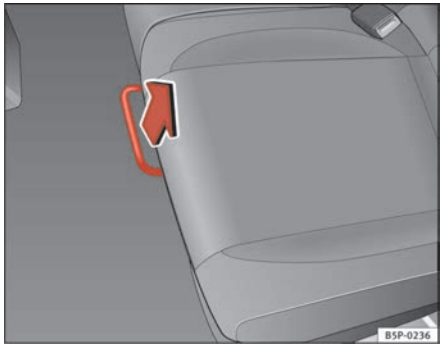


Fig. 97 For unlocking the rear seat

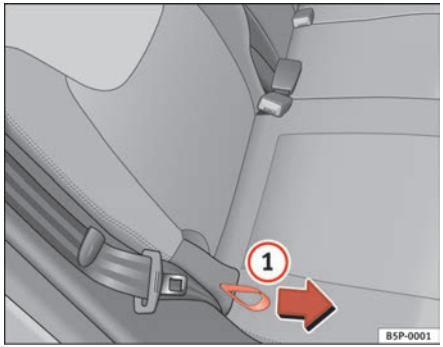


Fig. 98 Rear seat back-rest angle adjustment

The seats may be moved forwards or backwards independently. The movement can be 1/3 or 2/3 of the seat. There are various possible positions.

### Adjusting reach

– In the seated position, unlock the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 97.

– Move the seat cushion forwards or backwards to the desired position.

### Backrest angle adjustment

– Hold the backrest at the top. Pull the loop on the side of the seat ⇒ fig. 98 (1) in the direction of the arrow and hold the loop in this position. Push the backrest to the required position and release the loop.

**WARNING**

- **Adjust the seat only when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, your seat could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. This could increase the risk of an accident and therefore, injury.**
- **Do not push the seatbacks down until the seat is moved, this is to avoid damage to the centre console.**
- **Ensure that the seat, once moved, is fixed in position.**

**Note**

- In order to maintain the maximum luggage compartment space, put the seatbacks in position normal, without moving.
- In order to maintain the maximum space without putting the seatbacks down, move the seats forward to the desired position. ■

## Folding the seat backrests down

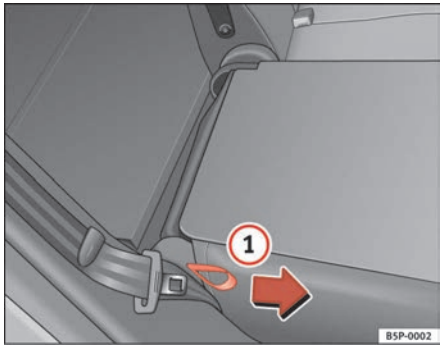


Fig. 99 Folding or opening the rear seat backrests

– Pull the loop on the side of the seat ⇒ fig. 99 (1).

In this position the back rest is locked. This is the reason why the loop located on the side of the seat must be pulled in the direction of the arrow to open the backrest.

**WARNING**

- **You should check that the backrest has engaged properly in position after the loop is released.**
- **The locking system loops on the seats may not, for reasons of safety, be used to secure any items.** ■

## Folding the rear seat backrests down

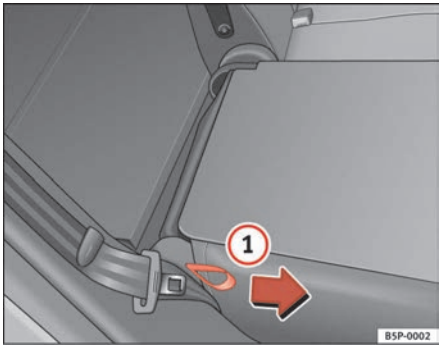


Fig. 100 Folding or opening the front seat backrests

– Pull the loop on the side of the seat ⇒ fig. 100 (1) in the direction of the arrow and lift the seat backrest into position.

**WARNING**

- **You should check that the backrest has engaged properly in position after the loop is released.**
- **The locking system loops on the seats may not, for reasons of safety, be used to secure any items.**
- **After locking the seat backrest into position ensure that the seat belts protrude from the seat.** ■

# Stowage compartments

## Stowage compartment on the front passenger side

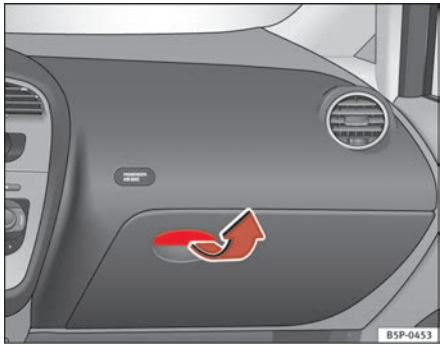


**Fig. 101 Passenger side: stowage compartment**

The compartment can be opened by pulling the lever ⇒ fig. 101.

**WARNING**

**Always keep the stowage compartment cover closed while the vehicle is in motion in order to reduce the risk of injury caused by a sudden braking or by an accident.** ■

## Centre arm rest at front with stowage area

*There is a stowage area in the armrest.*

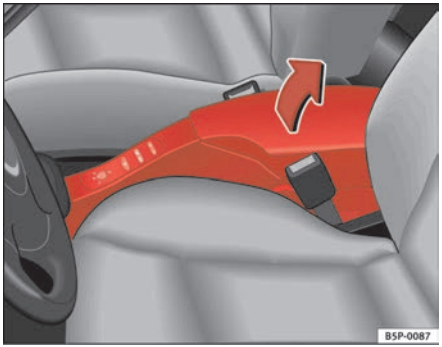


**Fig. 102 Front armrest with stowage area**

– To open the stowage area, lift the armrest up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 102 and then lift the cover.

– To access the CD loader* or the lower stowage area, pull on the armrest cover without pressing on the button.

– To close the stowage area, push the armrest down.

**WARNING**

**Always keep the stowage area closed while the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of injury from the armrest during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident.**

**Note**

The CD changer is located in this compartment. ■

## Stowage areas under the front seats*

*There is a stowage locker with a cover under each front seat.*

**Fig. 103 Stowage area under the front seats**

The drawer* ⇒ fig. 103 (A) is opened by pushing the button and putting the cover back.

There are two open positions of 15 and 60 degrees depending on the pressure applied to the cover. In the 60 degree position, the cover will collapse if too much pressure is applied.

To close the drawer, press the cover until it locks into position.

**WARNING**

- **The drawers will hold a maximum weight of 1.5 kg.**
- **Do not drive with the drawer cover open. There is an injury risk for passengers if the cargo is released in case of sudden braking or an accident.** ■

## Folding table*

*Folding tables are fitted to the rear of the front seat backrests.*

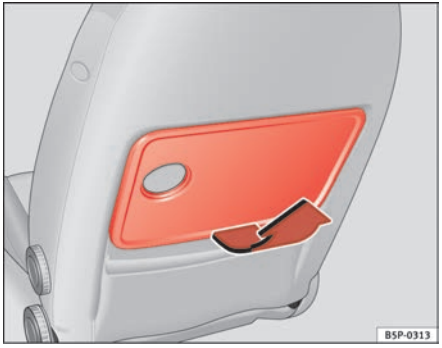


**Fig. 104 Folding table of front left seat**

– To open the table, open it up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 104.

**WARNING**

- **The folding tables may not be folded down whilst the vehicle is in motion and anyone is seated on the second row of seats. There is a risk on injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre! The table must therefore be closed and properly secured whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never place hot drinks in the drink holders. During normal or sudden driving manoeuvres, sudden braking or an accident, the hot drink could be spilled. Danger of scalding.**

**Caution**

When driving, do not leave open cans in the cup holders. The drink might be spilt on braking, for example, and could damage the vehicle. ■

## Roof stowage compartment*

*There are four stowage compartments in the roof*

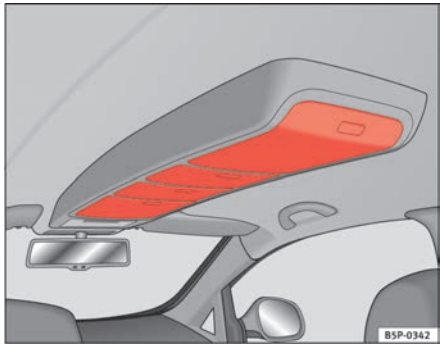


**Fig. 105 Roof stowage compartments**

– Press the button on the cover to open these compartments ⇒ fig. 105. The cover will then open.

– To close the cover, press it up until it engages.

**WARNING**

**Always keep the stowage area cover closed while the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident and to prevent any items from being thrown through the vehicle interior.** ■

## Stowage in the luggage compartment*

*There is a variable stowage area* in the luggage compartment floor.*

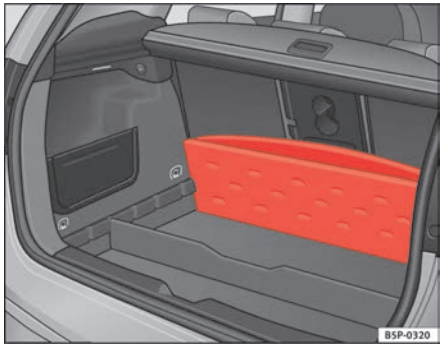


**Fig. 106 Variable floor boot stowage compartment**

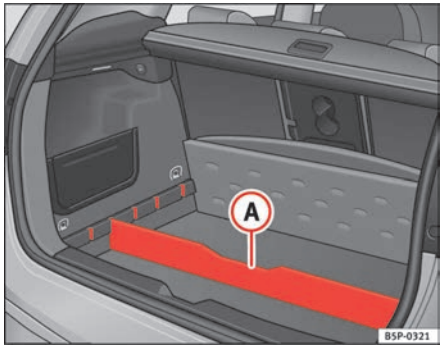


**Fig. 107 Variable floor boot stowage compartment**

– Lift the luggage compartment floor and fold it back all the way ⇒ fig. 106.

– Fit the separator (A) ⇒ fig. 107, into the side grooves depending on the size of the objects to be transported. The onboard tool kit and the spare wheel are located underneath the luggage compartment.

– Secure luggage in the luggage compartment with suitable straps on the fastening rings.

**Note**

- The folding table is designed for a maximum load of 50 kg. For heavier loads fold up the table and remove.
- Do not exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle ⇒ page 275. ■

## Luggage compartment retaining net

*There is a retaining net in the luggage compartment for securing objects.*

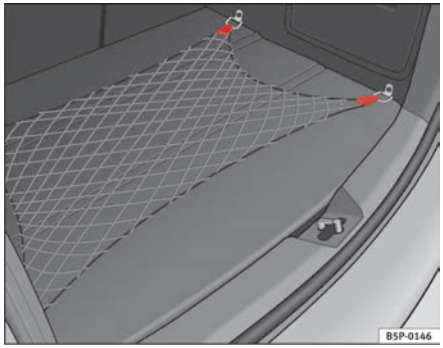


Fig. 108 Retaining net

– Use the fastening rings located on the side of the luggage compartment to attach the retaining net ⇒ fig. 108.

**Note**

- The folding table is designed for a maximum load of 50 kg. For heavier loads fold up the table and remove.
- Do not exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle ⇒ page 275. ■

## Other stowage areas

Other stowage areas can be found:

- in the centre console,
- in the door trims (front and rear),
- in the side trims of the luggage compartment,
- in the spare wheel recess in the luggage compartment (only on vehicles with an optional anti-puncture kit*.

The clothes hooks are located on the rear roof handles.

**WARNING**

- **Do not store loose objects on the dashboard. These objects could be flung through the passenger compartment when the vehicle is moving (e.g. while accelerating, braking or cornering) and distract the driver. Risk of accident.**
- **Ensure that no objects can fall from the centre console or other stowage areas into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to use the brake, clutch or accelerator. Risk of accident.**
- **Clothing hung on the coat hooks must not restrict the driver's view. Risk of accident. The coat hooks are intended only for use with light articles of clothing. Do not leave any hard, sharp or heavy objects in hanging articles of clothing. During sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, especially those involving airbag deployment, these objects could injure the vehicle occupants.** ■

## Drinks holders at the front

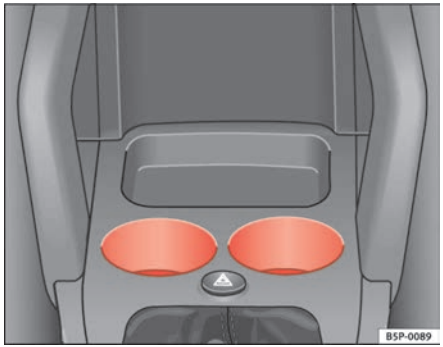


Fig. 109 Front drink holder

In the centre console, in front of the gear lever, there are two drink holders ⇒ fig. 109.

**WARNING**

- **Never place hot drinks in the drink holders. During normal or sudden driving manoeuvres, sudden braking or an accident, the hot drink could be spilled. Danger of scalding.**
- **Never use rigid materials (for example, glass or ceramic), these could cause injury in the case of an accident.** ■

## Rear drink holder* / Armrest*

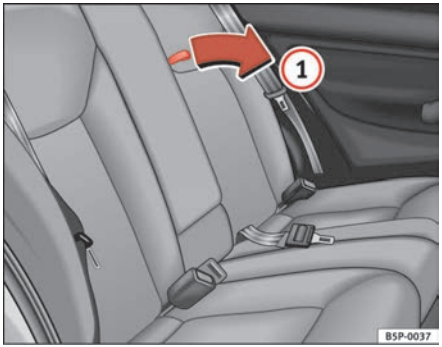


Fig. 110 Opening the rear drink holders

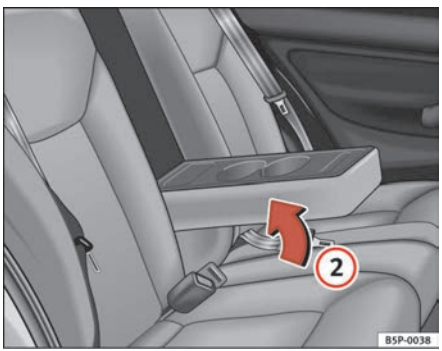


Fig. 111 Rear armrest/drink holder

### Opening and closing the armrest* / drink holder*

– To open, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 142, fig. 110 (1).

– To close, lift the Drink holder* / armrest* in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 142, fig. 111 (2).

**WARNING**

**Ensure that the load in the luggage compartment is correctly secured with the retainer net when travelling with the armrest down ⇒ page 141.** ■

## Multi-purpose* mobile stowage compartment - Fitting and removal

*This stowage compartment may only be placed in the central area of the rear seat*

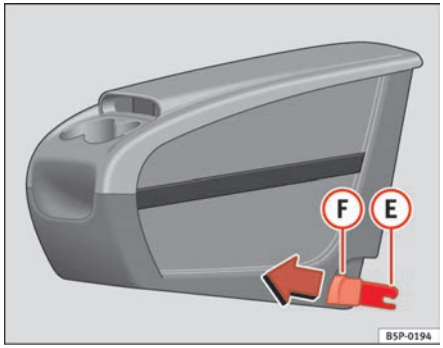


**Fig. 112 Mobile stowage compartment Installation**

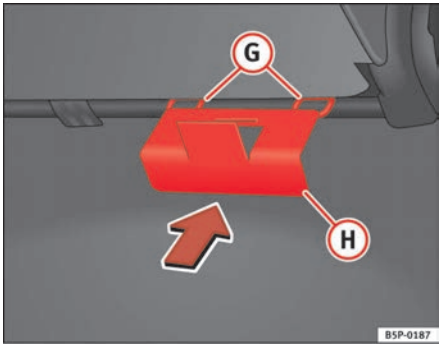


**Fig. 113 Mobile stowage compartment mounting plate**

### Fitting mobile stowage compartment

– Fold down the small section of the rear seat back rest, in order to access the large section of the back rest.

– Fit the mobile stowage compartment mounting plate (H) ⇒ fig. 113 from the inside of the vehicle, through the rear section of the seat. It should be fitted between the back rest and the seat, in the central seat area.

– Push the plate until it clips the cushion frame. The rings of the mobile stowage compartment mounting plate appear at the front of the seat.

– If it is difficult to make the plate clip, tilt the rear back rest of the large section forwards slightly and then lean the back rest backwards to make the fitting of the mobile stowage compartment onto the mounting plate easier. ▶

– Place the mobile stowage compartment onto the foam of the central seat.

– Set both mounting pieces together (E) ⇒ page 143, fig. 112, with both mounting rings (G) ⇒ page 143, fig. 113 and press hard until both the clips completely connect with the rings.

**Removing mobile stowage compartment**

– Pull each of the buttons ⇒ page 143, fig. 112 (F) on the clips (red buttons) forwards, until they snap out of place.

– Fold the larger seat down and remove the mobile stowage compartment mounting plate. ■

## Multi-purpose* mobile stowage compartment - General information

*This stowage compartment may only be placed in the central area of the rear seat*

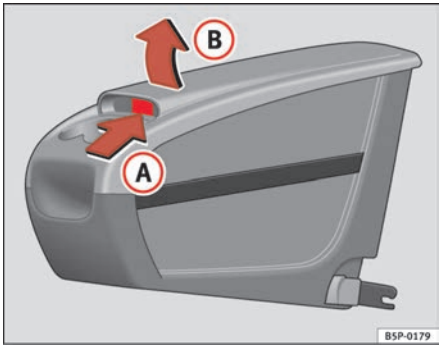


**Fig. 114 Mobile stowage compartment Opening**

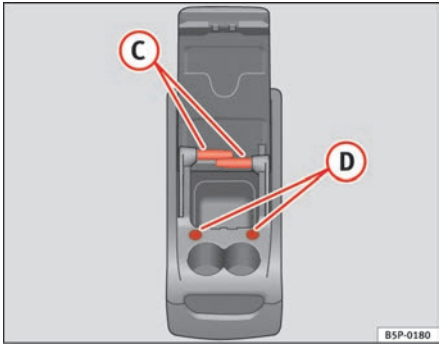


**Fig. 115 Mobile stowage compartment Duties**

### Opening

– Lift the cover (B), in area (A) ⇒ page 144, fig. 114.

### Closing

– Push the cover down, until it clips into place.

#### Uses of the mobile stowage compartment

- The front open glove box may be used to store small objects that will not damage passengers in the event that the objects are flung around the interior of the vehicle.
- The drink holders are used for holding drink cans or cups.
- The elastic belt on the side may be used for keeping papers and magazines.
- The tables may be used as a support for writing.

To use the table (C) ⇒ page 144, fig. 115, it must be removed from its compartment on the side of the mobile stowage compartment and fitted into compartment (D) ⇒ page 144, fig. 115 on the front section of the mobile stowage compartment.

The table in the right-hand compartment is fitted in the left-hand compartment of the front of the mobile stowage compartment and the table in the left-hand compartment is fitted in the right-hand compartment.

The tables have two positions for use and cannot be interchanged.

**WARNING**

- **The mobile stowage compartment supports a maximum load of 5 kg. Do not overload.**
- **Do not drive when the cover of the mobile stowage compartment is open.**
- **Do not drive when the tables are set up for use.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **When the vehicle is moving, keep the tables stored inside the mobile stowage compartment with the cover closed, and likewise when they are not in use**
- **Never place hot drinks in the drink holders. The drink may spill and cause burns when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Do not leave cans in the drinkholder when the vehicle is in motion, there is a danger that the can may be flung around the vehicle and cause injury.**
- **Make sure that the mounting plate is correctly clipped onto the cushion frame.**
- **When the plate is not in use, store inside the stowage compartment.**
- **When the mobile stowage compartment is not in use, it should always be fastened by the retaining net in the luggage compartment.**

**Note**

- Check that the mobile stowage compartment is correctly fitted, pulling it forwards by the front glove box and checking that both safety clips are correctly clipped onto the rings. ■

# Ashtrays*, cigarette lighter* and electrical sockets*

## Ashtray*

Fig. 116 Ashtray located in the front drink holder

### Opening and closing the ashtray

– To open the ashtray, lift the cover ⇒ fig. 116.

– To close, push the cover down.

### Emptying the ashtray

– Extract the ashtray and empty it.

**WARNING**

**Never put paper in the ashtray. Hot ash could ignite the paper in the ashtray and cause a fire.** ■

## Cigarette lighter*

Fig. 117 The cigarette lighter is located in the electric socket on the front of the centre console

– Press on the cigarette lighter ⇒ fig. 117 to activate it ⇒ ⚠.

– Wait for the lighter to pop out slightly.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil.

**WARNING**

- **Improper use of the cigarette lighter can lead to serious injuries or start a fire.**
- **Using the lighter carefully. Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns, risk of injury.**
- **The lighter only works when the ignition is turned on or the engine is running. To avoid the risk of fire, never leave children alone inside the vehicle.** ■

## Electrical sockets*

*Electrical equipment can be connected to any of the 12 volt sockets.*

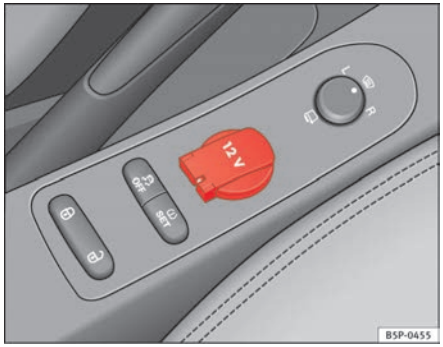


Fig. 118 Socket, centre console, front

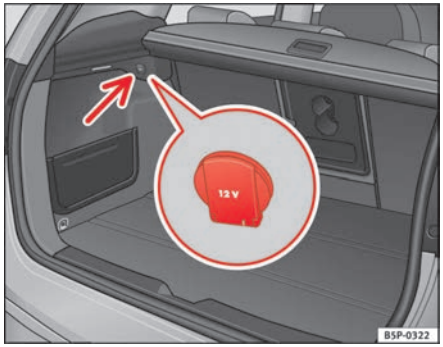


Fig. 119 Socket, luggage compartment

Electrical accessories may be connected to the 12 volt socket in the front centre console ⇒ fig. 118 of the passenger compartment and that of the boot* ⇒ fig. 119. The appliances connected to each power point must not exceed a power rating of 120 Watt.

**WARNING**

**The current power points and the connected accessories will only operate when the ignition is on or when the engine is running. Improper use of the sockets or electrical accessories can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children alone inside the vehicle.**

**Note**

- The use of electrical appliances with the engine switched off will cause a battery discharge.
- Before using any electrical accessories, see the instructions on ⇒ page 210. ■

## Auxiliary audio connection (AUX-IN)*

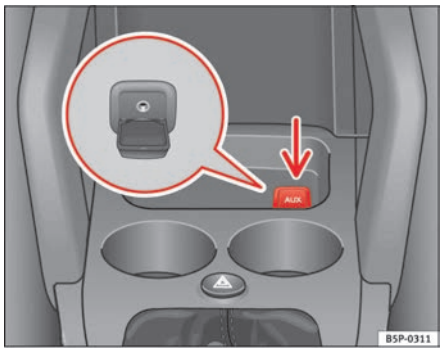


Fig. 120 Auxiliary audio connection

– Lift the AUX. cover ⇒ fig. 120.

– Insert the pin as far as possible (see Radio manual). ■

## AUX RSE connection*

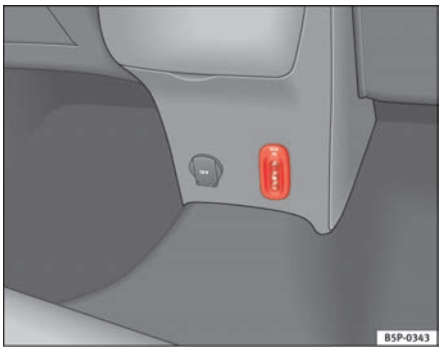


Fig. 121 AUX RSE connection

This connector may be used as an audio input (red and white connectors) or audio and video connector (red, white and yellow connectors). For more details about the use of this audio and video source, see the RSE manual. ■

## MEDIA-IN* connector

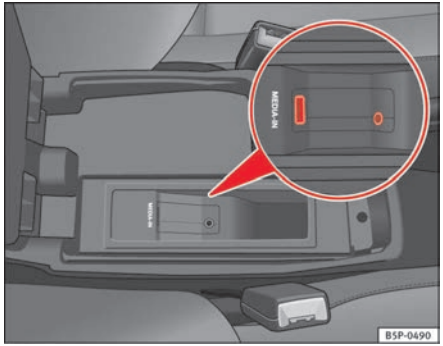


Fig. 122 Connection in central armrest compartment

For information concerning the use of this equipment, please see the Radio handbook. ■

# First-aid kit, warning triangle, fire extinguisher

## Warning triangle and first-aid kit*

The warning triangle and the first aid kit may be located in the stowage compartment on the floor of the boot, under the carpet.

The first aid kit may be located in the stowage compartment drawer on the boot floor under the carpet or in the stowage compartment in the boot side lining, depending on the version.

**Note**

- The warning triangle and the first aid box do not belong to the standard vehicle equipment.
- The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements.
- Observe the expiry date of the contents of the first aid kit. You should purchase a new first-aid kit as soon as possible after the shelf-life date of the first-aid kit has expired.
- Before acquiring accessories and emergency equipment see the instructions on ⇒ page 210. ■

## Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher* is attached to the luggage compartment carpet by velcro.

**Note**

- The fire extinguisher **does not** belong to the standard vehicle equipment.
- The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.
- Ensure that the fire extinguisher is fully functional. The fire extinguisher should, therefore, be checked regularly. The sticker on the fire extinguisher will inform you of the next date for checking.
- Before acquiring accessories and emergency equipment see the instructions on ⇒ page 210. ■

# Boot

## Stowing luggage

*All luggage must be securely stowed.*

Please observe the following points to ensure the vehicle handles well at all times:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage in the luggage compartment with suitable straps on the fastening rings*.

**WARNING**

- **Loose luggage and other loose items in the vehicle can cause serious injuries.**
- **Loose objects in the luggage compartment can suddenly move and change the way the vehicle handles.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects in the passenger compartment can be flung forward, injuring vehicle occupants.**
- **Always store objects in the luggage compartment and secure with suitable straps. This is especially important for heavy objects.**
- **When you transport heavy objects, always take in account that a change in the centre of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling.**
- **Please observe information on safe driving ⇒ page 7, “Safe driving”.**

**Caution**

Hard objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

**Note**

The ventilation slots in front of the rear side windows must not be covered as this would prevent stale air being extracted from the vehicle. ■

## Luggage compartment cover

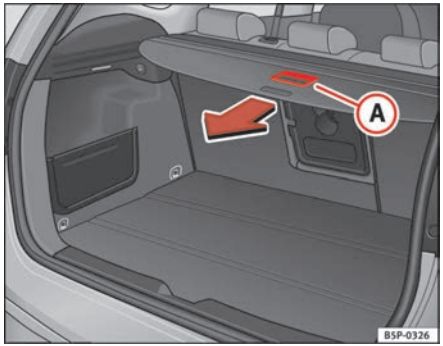


Fig. 123 Using the luggage compartment cover

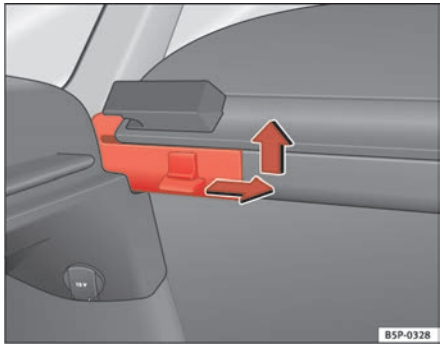


Fig. 124 Removing the luggage compartment cover

### Using the luggage compartment cover

– Use the handle (A) to pull the cover back until you hear a “click” ⇒ fig. 123.

– Press the area marked “PRESS”,and the cover is retrieved automatically.

### To remove the luggage compartment cover

– Press the side pin in the direction of the arrow, lift the cover and remove it ⇒ fig. 124.

– Follow the instructions in reverse to fit it.

**WARNING**

**Do not place heavy or hard objects on the open stowage compartment, because they will endanger the vehicle occupants in case of sudden braking.**

**Caution**

- Before closing the tailgate, ensure that the stowage compartment tray is correctly fitted.
- An overloaded boot could mean that the rear stowage tray is not correctly seated and it may be bent or damaged.
- If the boot is overloaded, remove the tray.

**Note**

- Ensure that, when placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, rear visibility is not reduced. ■

## Partition net*

*The partition grille prevents loose objects in the luggage compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment (e.g. under sudden braking).*

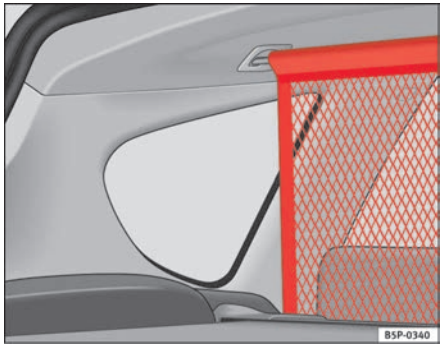


**Fig. 125 Separation net**

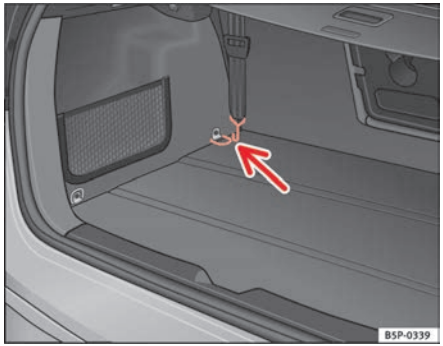


**Fig. 126 Anchor rings for the separation net**

– Pull the net from underneath between the seatback and the folding tray and fit it to the allotments on the roof, first to the right then to the left ⇒ fig. 125.

– Hook the belts into the front anchor rings to tense the net ⇒ fig. 126. ■

## Roof carrier*

Please observe the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- For safety reasons, only luggage racks and accessories approved by SEAT should be used.
- It is essential that you follow the assembly instructions included with the bars exactly, being especially careful to position front and rear luggage compartment cover bars on the special housings on the longitudinal bars. You must also respect their position according to the direction of travel indicated in the assembly manual. Not following these instructions may lead to marks on the longitudinal bars.
- Distribute the load evenly. A maximum load of 40 kg only is permitted for each roof carrier system support bar, the load must be distributed evenly along the entire length. However, the maximum load permitted for the entire roof (including the support system) of 75 kg must not be exceeded nor should the total weight of the vehicle be exceeded. See the chapter on “Technical Data”.
- When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof, any change in the normal vehicle behaviour due to a change in the centre of gravity or an increased wind resistance must be taken into account. For this reason, a suitable speed and driving style must be used.
- For those vehicles fitted with a sunroof*, ensure that it does not interfere with the load on the roof carrier system when opened. ■

# Heating, Ventilation and Air conditioning

## Heating

### Controls and equipment

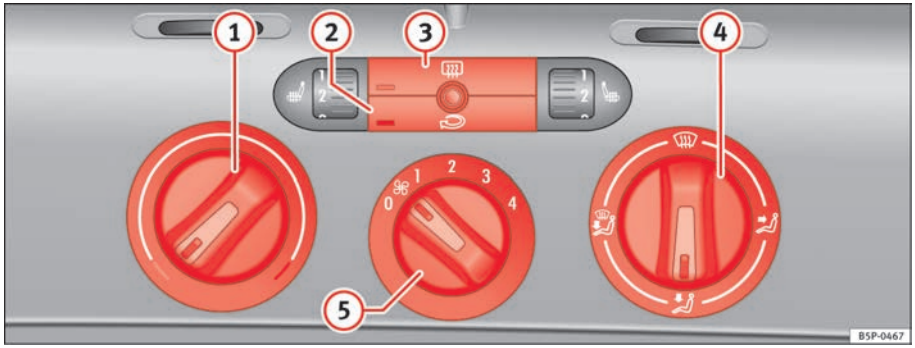


Fig. 127 On the dash panel there are the heating controls

– Using the controls ⇒ fig. 127 (1) and (4) and the control (5) you can set the temperature, air distribution and the turbine speed.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button (2) or (3). When the function is activated, the display window in the lower left of the button is lit.

**Temperature**

With the regulator (1) the heating level is determined. The required temperature inside the vehicle cannot be lower than the ambient temperature.

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

**Rear window heater**

This function (2) will be switched off automatically approximately *20 minutes* after being switched on. It can also be switched off beforehand by pushing the button

**Air recirculation mode**

Air recirculation mode (3) prevents strong odours in the outside air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic ⇒ ⚠.

With low temperatures outside, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the heating system by heating the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the air from outside.

**Air distribution**

Control (4) for setting the flow of air in the required direction.

– Air distribution towards the windscreen. If the windscreen air output is on and the air recirculation mode is pressed, this remains active. When the recirculation mode is on, if the air distribution towards the windscreen mode is selected, the recirculation mode is deactivated. For safety reasons, the air recirculation mode should not be connected.

– Air distribution to the upper body.

– Air distribution to footwell

– Air distribution to the windscreen and the foot well.

**Blower**

The air flow can be set at four speeds with the control (5). The air flow should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

**WARNING**

- **For road safety all windows must be clear of ice, snow, and condensation. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the anti-fog/defrost functions for the windscreens.**
- **In air recirculation mode, no cold air from the outside enters the vehicle interior. The windows can quickly fog over if the heating is switched off. Therefore, never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for a long time (risk of accident).**

**Note**

Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 163. ■

# Climatic*

## Control switches

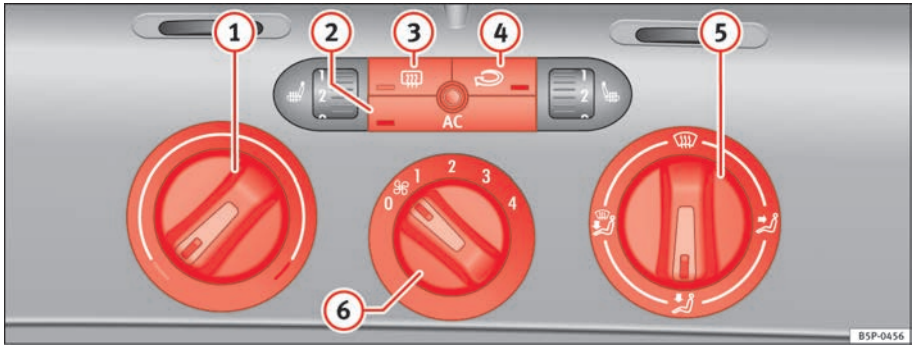


Fig. 128 On the dash panel: Climatic controls

The climatic or semi-automatic air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the turbine is switched on.

– By using the regulators ⇒ fig. 128 (1) and (5) and the control (6) the temperature, air distribution and the turbine speed can be set.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button (2), (3) or (4). When the function is activated, the display window in the lower corner of the button is lit.

(1) Temperature selector ⇒ page 156
(2) Button [AC] – Heating, ventilation and air-conditioning system on/off ⇒ page 156
(3) Button [⊞] – Rear window heating. The heating will be switched off automatically approximately *20 minutes* after switching on. It can also be switched off beforehand by pushing the button.
(4) Button [⟲] – Air recirculation mode ⇒ page 157
(5) Air distribution control ⇒ page 156
(6) Blower switch. There are four speed settings for the air flow. The air flow should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

**WARNING**

**For road safety all windows must be clear of ice, snow, and condensation. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the anti-fog/defrost functions for the windscreens.**

**Note**

Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 163. ■

## Heating and cooling the interior

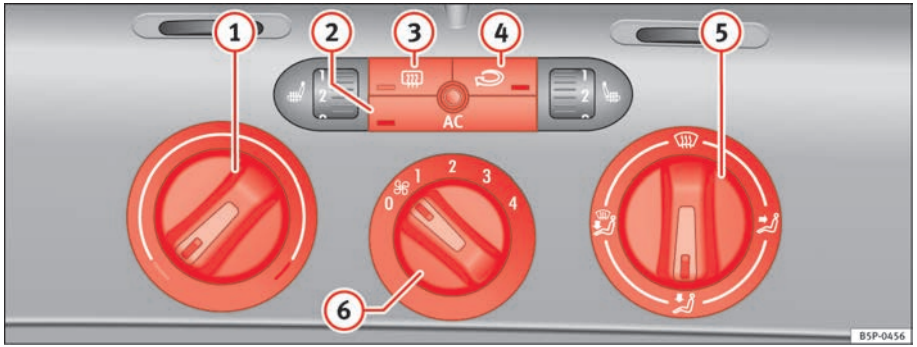


Fig. 129 On the dash panel: Climatic controls

### Interior heating

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 129 (1) clockwise to select the required temperature.

– Turn the blower switch to one of the settings 1-4.

– Set the air distribution control to the air flow configuration desired: (towards the windscreen), (towards the chest), (towards the footwell) and (towards the windscreen and footwell areas).

### Interior cooling

– Switch on the air conditioning using the button ⇒ page 155, fig. 128 AC.

– Turn the temperature selector anti-clockwise until the desired cooling output is reached.

– Turn the blower switch to one of the settings 1-4. ▶

– Use the air distribution control to guide the flow of air in the required direction: (to the windscreen), (to the upper body), (to the foot well) and (to the windscreen and to the foot well).

**Heating**

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

**Air conditioner**

When the air conditioning system is switched on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents misting of the windows when the ambient air humidity is high.

If the air conditioning system cannot be switched on this may be caused by the following reasons:

- The engine may not be running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The outside temperature is below +3°C.
- The air conditioning system compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The air conditioning fuse is faulty.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioning checked by a qualified workshop. ■

## Air recirculation mode

*Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from coming from the outside.*

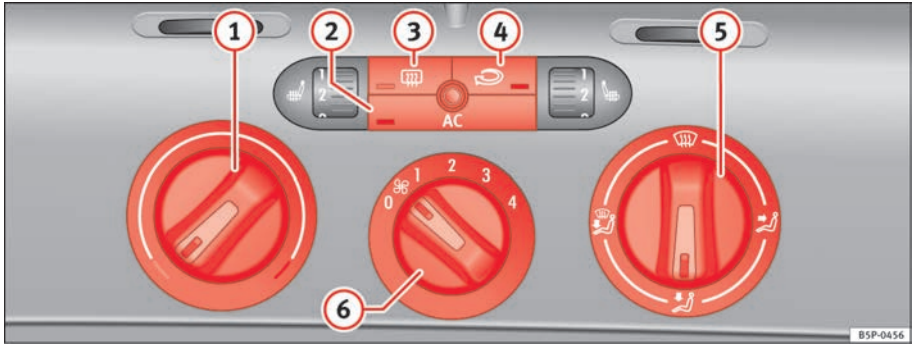


Fig. 130 On the dash panel: Climatic controls

Air recirculation mode ⇒ page 157, fig. 130 prevents strong odours in the outside air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic.

With low temperatures outside, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the heating system by warming the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the cold air from outside.

With high ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the air conditioning system by cooling the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

If the windscreen air output is on and the air recirculation mode is pressed, this remains active. When the recirculation mode is on, if the air distribution towards the windscreen mode is selected, the recirculation mode is deactivated. For safety reasons, the air recirculation mode should not be connected.

**WARNING**

**In air recirculation mode, no cold air from the outside enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioning system is switched off, the windows can quickly mist over. Therefore, never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for a long time (risk of accident).** ■

# 2C-Climatronic*

## Control switches

*The controls allow separate adjustment of air conditioning settings for the left and right.*

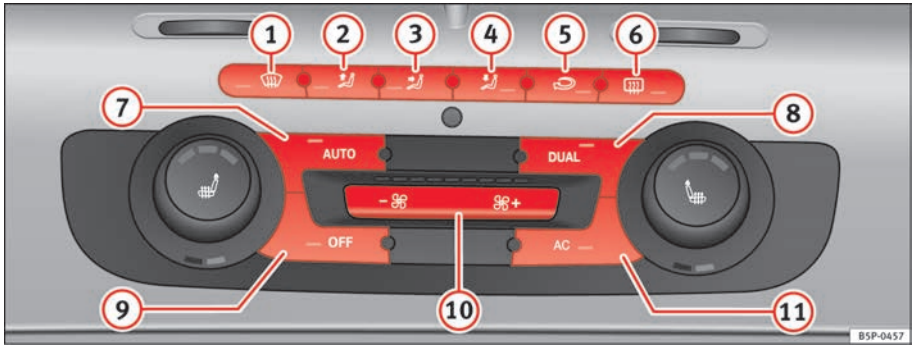


Fig. 131 On the dash panel: 2C Climatronic controls

The air conditioning system controls the temperature when the engine is running and the blower is switched on.

– Turn the temperature control knobs ⇒ fig. 131 (9) or (14) in order to adjust the temperature on the left hand side or the right hand side respectively.

– The functions will be switched on when its buttons are pressed. When these functions are activated, they are indicated on the radio display. In addition, all these functions are lit with LEDs. Press the button again to switch off the function.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

(1) Button – defrost function for the windscreen. The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windscreen. The air recirculation mode, if switched on, will be switched off as soon as the defrost function is switched on. At temperatures over 3°C, the air conditioning system will be switched on automatically and the blower speed will be increased by one level in order to dry the air. The button is lit in yellow and the symbol appears on the radio or navigator display.

(2) Button – Upward air distribution

(3) Button – Central air distribution

(4) Button – Downward air distribution

5 Button – Manual air recirculation mode.
6 Button – Rear window heating. The heating will be switched off automatically approximately *20 minutes* after switching on. However, it may be turned off by pushing the button. The button lights up yellow and the symbol appears in the display.
7 Button AUTO – Automatic temperature, ventilation and air distribution control ⇒ page 161
8 DUAL button - Dual zone synchroniser
9 Button OFF – Switches the 2C-Climatronic on and off ⇒ page 162
10 Blower control ⇒ page 162
11 AC button – Switches heating, ventilation and air-conditioning system on

**WARNING**

**For road safety all windows must be clear of ice, snow, and condensation. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the anti-fog/defrost functions for the windscreens.**

**Note**

Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 163. ■

## Viewing Climatronic information

*Information about the Climatronic system can be displayed on the radio or radio and navigation screen mounted at factory.*

**Fig. 132 Navigation display with information about the Climatronic**

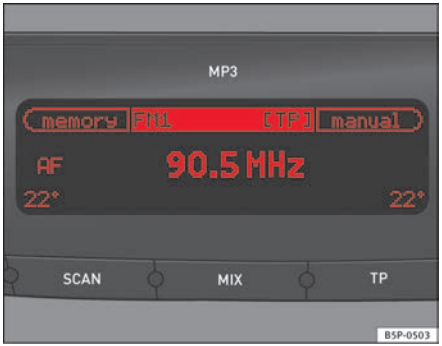


**Fig. 133 Radio display with information about Climatronic**

The LEDs on the Climatronic controls indicate that the selected function has been activated.

In addition, the radio or radio and navigation displays mounted at factory briefly display the current settings of the Climatronic if any are modified.

The symbols used on the radio or radio and navigation displays are the same as the symbols used for the Climatronic controls. ■

## Automatic mode

*In automatic mode air temperature, air flow and distribution are automatically regulated so that a specified temperature is attained as quickly as possible and then maintained.*

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

### Switching on automatic mode

– Press AUTO ⇒ page 159, fig. 131. “AUTO High” is shown on the radio display (high fan speed).

– Press AUTO again ⇒ page 159, fig. 131. “AUTO Low” is shown on the radio display (low fan speed).

Depending upon the version and finish, the vehicle may include:

When a temperature of 22°C (72°F) is set in automatic mode a comfortable interior climate is quickly reached. Therefore, we recommend you not to change this adjustment, except as necessary to suit individual preferences or particular circumstances. The compartment temperature can be set between +18°C (64°F) and +26°C (80°F). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the ambient conditions.

Climatronic maintains a constant temperature. The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the blower speed and the air distribution are regulated automatically. The system also considers the sunlight radiation, so there is no need for manual readjustment. Therefore, **automatic mode** almost always provides the best comfort for the vehicle occupants throughout the year.

Automatic mode is switched off whenever an adjustment is made using the buttons for the air distribution, air flow or or the air recirculation button . The temperature will continue to be regulated within the parameters manually selected by the user.

**Note**

There are two automatic modes:

- Automatic mode LO: This calculates the air flow for two people.
- Automatic mode HI: This calculates the air flow for more than two people. ■

## Manual mode

*In manual mode you can adjust the air temperature, air flow and distribution as required.*

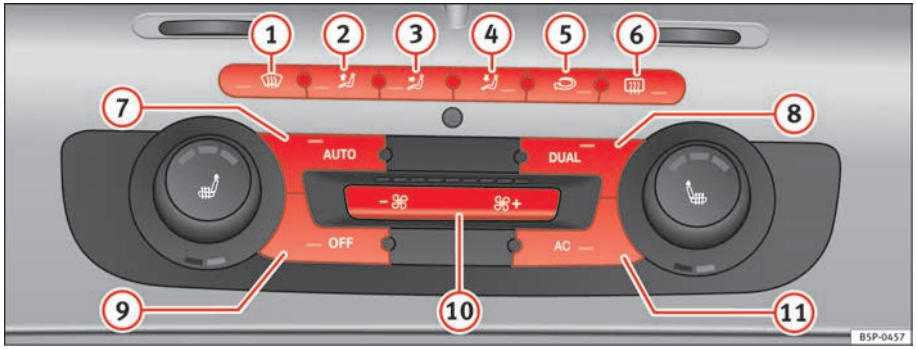


**Fig. 134 On the instrument panel: 2C Climatronic controls.**

### Switching on manual mode

– To enter manual mode, press one of the buttons ⇒ fig. 134 (1) to (5) or press the air flow control (10). The selected function is shown on the radio or navigator display.

#### Temperature

There are separate temperature selectors for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior. The selected temperature is displayed above the selector. The compartment temperature can be set between +18°C (64°F) and +26°C (80°F). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the ambient conditions.

If a temperature below 18°C (64°F) is selected, the display switches to **LO** In this setting the system runs at maximum cooling output and the temperature is not regulated.

If a temperature above 26°C (80°F) is selected, the display switches to **HI** In this setting the system runs at maximum heating output and the temperature is not regulated.

#### Blower

The air flow may be adjusted freely using the control (10). Always have the blower running at a low setting to ensure a constant flow of fresh air into the vehicle. Pushing the button to the minimum -1, turns the Climatronic off.

#### Air distribution

The air distribution is adjusted using the buttons , and . It is also possible to open and close some of the air vents separately.

#### Switching the air conditioning system on and off

When the AC button is on (LED lit), the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system is on.

When the AC button is off (LED off), the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system is off.

When the AC button is off, the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system is switched off to save fuel. The temperature continues to self-regulate. The set temperature can then only be reached if it is higher than the ambient temperature.

**Driver and passenger temperature control**

The DUAL button controls the synchronisation of the 2 Climatronic climate zones.

When the DUAL button is on (LED lit), the climate zone of the Climatronic is personalised, for example: Driver side temperature 22°C and passenger side temperature 23°C.

When the DUAL button is off (LED off), the climate zone of the Climatronic is synchronised, for example: Driver side temperature 22°C and passenger side temperature 22°C.

If the DUAL button is off and the passenger side temperature is changed, the function is automatically activated. ■

## Air recirculation mode

*Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from coming from the outside.*

– Press the button ⟲ ⇒ page 162, fig. 134 2 to switch air recirculation mode on or off. It is switched on if the following symbol appears in the display ⟲.

Air recirculation mode prevents strong odours in the ambient air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in a traffic jam.

With low temperatures outside, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the heating system by heating the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the air from outside.

With high ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the air conditioning system by cooling the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

If the windscreen air output is on and the air recirculation mode is pressed, this remains active. When the recirculation mode is on, if the air distribution towards the windscreen mode is selected, the recirculation mode is deactivated. For safety reasons, the air recirculation mode should not be connected.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In air recirculation mode, no cold air from the outside enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioning system is switched off, the windows can quickly mist over. Therefore, never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for a long time (risk of accident).** ■

# General notes

**The impurity filter**

The impurity filter (a combined particle filter and active carbon filter) serves as a barrier against impurities in the ambient air, including dust and pollen.

For the air conditioning system to work with maximum efficiency, the pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals specified in the Service Schedule.

If the filter loses efficiency prematurely due to use in areas reaching very high pollution levels, the pollen filter must be changed more frequently than stated in the Service Schedule. ▶

**Air conditioner**

When the air conditioning system is switched on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents misting of the windows when the ambient air humidity is high.

If the air conditioning system cannot be switched on this may be caused by the following reasons:

- The engine is not running.
- The AC button is disconnected.
- The outside temperature is below +3°C.
- The air conditioning system compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The air conditioning fuse is faulty.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioning checked by a qualified workshop.

**Caution**

- If you suspect that the air conditioning is damaged, switch it off with the AC button to prevent further damage and have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require specialist knowledge and special tools. Therefore, we recommend you to take the vehicle to a qualified workshop.

**Note**

- If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and so forming a puddle underneath the vehicle. This is completely normal and there is no need to suspect a leak.
- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling are not impaired, and to prevent the windows from misting over.
- The air from the vents flows through the passenger compartment and is extracted by slots designed for this purpose. Therefore, do not cover these slots with items of clothing or other objects.
- The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows and the sliding/tilting roof* closed. However, if the vehicle has been overheated by sun, the air inside can be cooled quicklier by opening the windows for a short time.
- Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the air conditioning system leaves a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odour.
- It is advisable to connect the air conditioning at least once a month, to lubricate the system gaskets and prevent leaks. If a decrease in the cooling capacity is detected, an Authorised Service Centre should be consulted to check the system. ■

# Driving

## Address

### Adjusting the steering wheel position

*The height and reach of the steering wheel can be freely adjusted to suit the driver.*

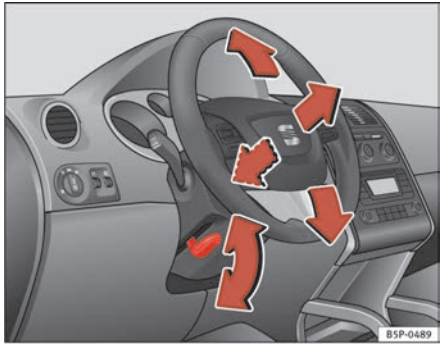


Fig. 135 Adjusting the steering wheel position

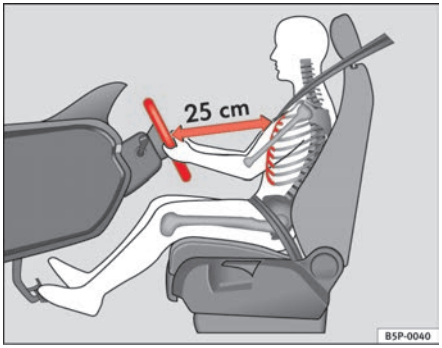


Fig. 136 Proper sitting position for driver

– Adjust the driver seat to the correct position.

– Push the lever under the steering column ⇒ fig. 135 down ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the steering wheel in this way until the correct position is set ⇒ fig. 136.

– Then push the lever up again firmly ⇒ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Incorrect use of the steering column adjustment function and an incorrect seating position can result in serious injury.**
- **To avoid accidents, the steering column should be adjusted only when the vehicle is stationary.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Adjust the driver seat or steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and your chest ⇒ page 165, fig. 136. If you fail to observe the minimum distance, the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **If your physical constitution does not allow you to mantain the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact an Authorised Service Centre. The Authorised Service Centre will help you to decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **If you adjust the steering wheel so that it points towards your face, the driver airbag will not protect you properly in the event of an accident. Make sure that the steering wheel points towards your chest.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel, or on the inside of the rim). In such cases, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.** ■

# Safety

## Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

*ESP helps make driving safer in certain situations.*

**Fig. 137 Detail of the centre console: ESP button**

The Electronic Stabilisation Program (ESP) contains the electronic differential lock (EDL) and the traction control system (TCS). The ESP function works together with the ABS. Both warning lamps will light up if the ESP or ABS systems are faulty.

The ESP is started automatically when the engine is started.

The ESP is always active, and cannot be switched off. With the ESP switch it is only possible to switch TCS off.

The TCS can be deactivated when in cases where wheel sliding is desirable.

For example:

- When driving with snow chains, ▶

- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces,
- when rocking the vehicle backwards and forwards to free it from mud, for example.

Next, the button should be pressed to reactivate the TCS.

**When does the warning light switch on or flash?**

- On switching the ignition on, it lights up for about two seconds to carry out a function control.
- The warning lamp will start flashing when the vehicle is moving if the ESP or the TCS is activated. The warning lamp will light up slowly if the TCS is switched off.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP.

**WARNING**

- **The electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**
- **Please refer to the corresponding warning notes on ESP in ⇒ page 185, "Intelligent technology".** ■

# Ignition lock

## Position of the ignition key

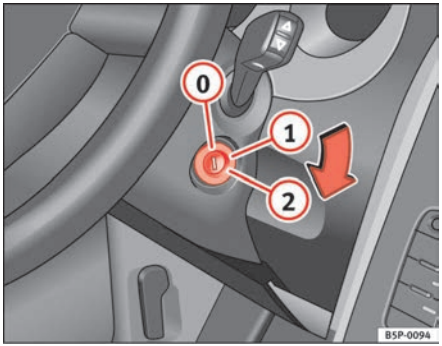


**Fig. 138 Ignition key positions**

**Ignition switched off, steering lock (0)**

In this position ⇒ fig. 138 the ignition and the engine are OFF and the steering may be locked.

For the **Steering lock** to operate without the ignition key, turn the steering wheel until it locks with an audible sound. You should always lock the steering wheel when you leave your vehicle. This will help prevent vehicle theft ⇒ ⚠.

**Switching the ignition or the glow plug system on (1)**

Turn the ignition key to this position and release it. If the key cannot be turned or it is difficult to turn from position (0) to position (12), move the steering wheel back and forth until it loosens up.

**Starting (2)**

The engine is started when the key is in this position. Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily.

Every time the vehicle is started again, the ignition key must be turned to position (0). The **repetitive start prevention lock** of the ignition prevents possible damage to the starter motor if the engine is already running.

**WARNING**

- **The ignition key must NOT be removed from the lock until the vehicle comes to a standstill. Otherwise, the steering could be immediately blocked- Risk of accident!**
- **Always remove the key from the ignition lock when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period. This is especially important if children or disabled people are left alone in the vehicle. They could accidentally start the engine or work electrical equipment such as the electric windows, consequently resulting in an accident.**
- **Unsupervised use of the keys could start the engine or any electrical system, such as the electric window. This could result in serious injury.**

**Caution**

The starter motor will only work when the engine is stopped (ignition key position (2)). ■

## Electronic immobiliser

*The immobiliser prevents unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.*

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition.

The immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with its correct code.

**Note**

A perfect operation of the vehicle is ensured if genuine SEAT keys are used. ■

# Starting and stopping the engine

## Starting petrol engines

*The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with its correct code.*

– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal thoroughly and hold it in this position for the starter to turn the engine on.

– Turn the ignition key to the starting ⇒ page 167 position.

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts; the starter motor must not run on with the engine.

After starting a very hot engine, you may need to slightly press down the accelerator.

When starting a very cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern. ▶

If the engine does not start immediately, switch the starter off after 10 seconds and try again after half a minute. If the engine still does not start, the fuel pump fuse should be checked ⇒ page 251, “Fuses”.

**WARNING**

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use “cold start sprays”, they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

**Caution**

- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.
- The vehicle should not be pushed or towed more than 50 metres to start the engine. Unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.
- Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle in order to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Note and follow the instructions ⇒ page 264, “Jump-starting”.

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ■

## Starting diesel engines

*The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with its correct code.*

– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal thoroughly and hold it in this position for the starter to turn the engine on.

– Turn the ignition key to the starting position.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 167, fig. 138 (1). The indication lamp ⌀ will light for engine pre-heating.

– When the warning lamp turns off, turn the key to position (2) to start the engine. Do not press the accelerator.

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts, the starter motor must not be allowed to run on with the engine.

When starting a very cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If there are problems starting the engine, see ⇒ page 264.

**Glow plug system for the diesel engine**

To avoid unnecessary discharging of the battery, do not use any other major electrical equipment while the glow plugs are pre-heating.

Start the engine as soon as the glow plug warning lamp ⇒ page 78 goes out.

**Starting the engine after the fuel tank has been completely run dry**

If the fuel tank has been completely run dry, it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) to start the engine after refuelling with diesel fuel. This is because the system must eliminate air first. ▶

**WARNING**

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use "cold start sprays", they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

**Caution**

- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.
- The vehicle should not be pushed or towed more than 50 metres to start the engine. Unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.
- Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle in order to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Note and follow the instructions ⇒ page 264, "Jump-starting".

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ■

## Switching the engine off

– Stop the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 167, fig. 138 (0).

After switching the engine off, the radiator fan may run on for up to 10 minutes. It is also possible that the fan turns itself on once more if the coolant temperature increases due to the heat accumulated in the engine compartment or due to its prolonged exposure to solar radiation.

**WARNING**

- **Never switch the engine off until the vehicle is completely stationary.**
- **The brake servo works only when the engine is running. With the engine switched off, more strength is needed to brake. As normal brake operation cannot be performed, risk of accidents and serious injury may exist.**
- **The steering lock can be immediately blocked once the key is removed from the ignition lock. The vehicle cannot be steered. Risk of accident.**

**Caution**

If the engine has been driven hard for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. Risk of engine damage. For this reason, you should idle the engine for approx. 2 minutes before you switch it off. ■

# Manual gearbox

## Driving a car with a manual gearbox

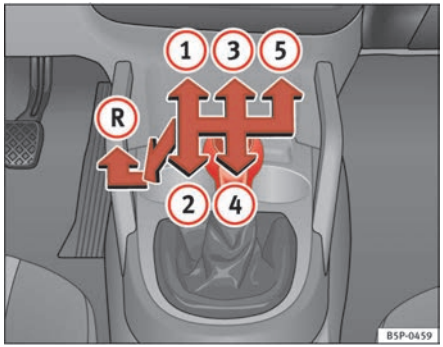


Fig. 139 Detail of the centre console: gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox

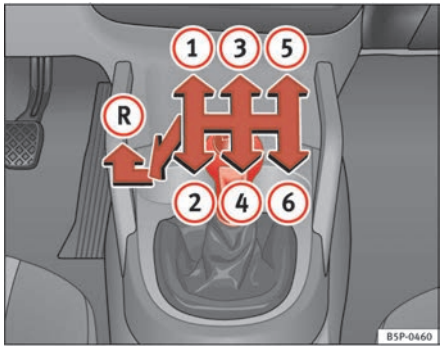


Fig. 140 Detail of the centre console: gear shift pattern of a 6-speed manual gearbox

### Engaging the reverse gear

– The vehicle should be stationary with the engine idling. Press the clutch down thoroughly.

– Place the gear lever into neutral and push the lever downwards.

– Slide the gear lever to the left, and then into the reverse position shown on the gear stick.

The reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is running and before engaging this gear, wait about 6 seconds with the clutch pressed down thoroughly in order to protect the gearbox.

The reverse lights light up when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

**WARNING**

- **When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.**
- **Never select the reverse gear when the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident.**

**Note**

- Do not rest your hand on the gear rest when driving. The pressure of your hand could cause premature wear on the selector forks in the gearbox.
- When changing gear, you should always depress the clutch down fully to avoid unnecessary wear and damage.
- Do not hold the car “on the clutch” uphills. This causes premature wear and damage to the clutch. ■

# Automatic gearbox* / DSG automatic gearbox*

## Selector lever positions

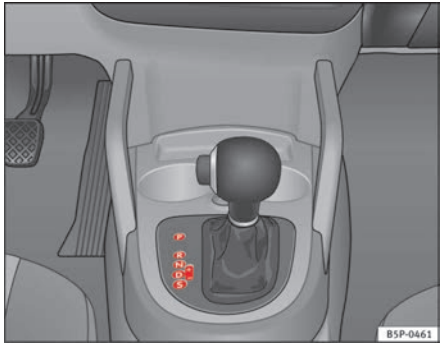


**Fig. 141 Centre console: selector lever for automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox DSG**

**Selector lever positions indicated on the cover**

**P** Parking position (lever locked).

**R** Reverse position.

**N** Neutral position (lever locked). This position is similar to the neutral position for manual gearboxes).

**D** Drive position (economic driving programme).

**S** Sports driving position.

**+/-** Tiptronic driving position (this programme is similar to the operation of a manual gearbox).

## Driving programmes

*The automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox has three programmes.*

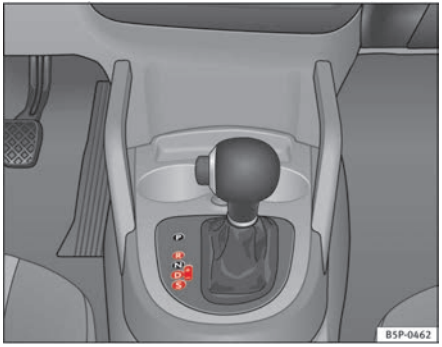


**Fig. 142 Program selection**

### Selecting the economy programme

– This programme selects a higher gear earlier rather than remain in a lower gear.

– Put the selector lever into position **D** to drive forwards

– Put the selector lever into position **R** to reverse. This position is shared by all programmes for reversing.

### Selecting the sport programme

– Move the lever to position **S**.

If you select the sport programme, **S**, the program is designed for a sports mode, that is, a programme which changes up at higher engine speeds to use ▶

the full power of the engine. This programme is not recommended for use on the motorway or in the city.

**Selecting the manual programme (tiptronic)**

This programme allows driving similar to a manual gearbox.

This programme may be accessed using the selector lever or from the steering wheel controls when this option is fitted ⇒ page 175. ■

## Selector lever locking

*The selector lever lock prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.*

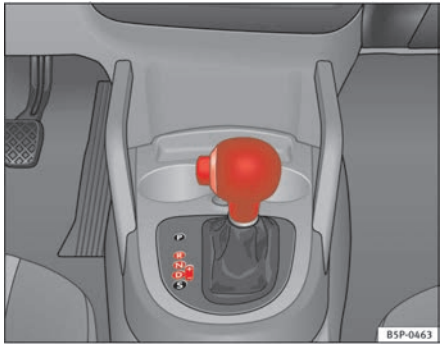


Fig. 143 Deactivating the lock

**Releasing the selector lever lock**

– Start the vehicle.

– Press and release the brake pedal, at the same time press the button on the selector lever.

The lock is only activated when the vehicle is stopped or at a speed of less than 5 km/h. At higher speeds, the lock is automatically released in position **N**.

For rapid changes of position (e.g. from **R** to **D**) the lever will not lock. If the lever remains in the position **N** more than one second then it is locked. With the automatic lock, the lever is prevented passing from **P** and **N** to any other gear without first pressing the brake pedal.

The selector lever must be put in the position **P** in order to remove the key. ■

## Driving with an automatic gearbox* / DSG automatic gearbox*

*The drive and reverse gears are automatically engaged.*

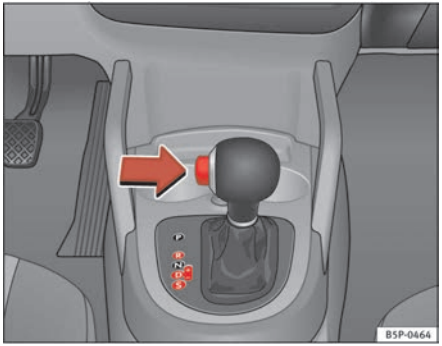


Fig. 144 Driving

### Driving

– Press and hold the foot brake.

– Press on the button on the selector lever knob on the left ⇒ page 173, fig. 144.

– Select a gear for driving (**R**, **D** or **S**).

– Release the button and wait a few seconds for the gear to engage, a light jerk will be felt.

– Release the brake and accelerate.

### Short stop

– Hold the vehicle stationary with the brake pressed down (for example at traffic lights). The selector lever does not need to be put into the positions **P** or **N** for this.

– Do not press the accelerator.

### Parking the vehicle

– Press the foot brake and hold to bring the vehicle to a stop.

– Apply the handbrake firmly.

– Press in the button on the selector lever knob, move the lever to the position **P** and release the button.

### Driving slowly

– Move the selector lever to the position **D** and press to the right to put the lever into Tiptronic mode.

– Press the gear lever towards (-) to select a lower gear.

### Hill stop

– Hold the vehicle, in all cases, using the foot brake to prevent rolling back.

– Do not try to slow the vehicle using another forward gear (engine braking).

### Descending gradients

– With the gear engaged, release the brake and accelerate.

The steeper the gradient the lower the gear must be for effective engine braking. For example, if 3rd gear is used on a very steep gradient, the engine braking is insufficient and vehicle accelerates. So that the engine speed does not become excessive, the gearbox changes to the next highest gear. Depress the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the Tiptronic gate to return to 3rd gear.

**WARNING**

- **The driver should never leave the vehicle while the engine is running or with any gear selected. If for any reason you must leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to position P.**
- **When the engine is running and the positions D, S or R are selected, it is necessary to hold the vehicle with the foot brake because the vehicle will creep at a low speed.**
- **Never accelerate while changing the position of the selector lever (risk of an accident).**
- **The selector lever must never be moved into the positions R or P while moving (risk of an accident).**
- **Before descending a steep gradient, reduce speed and use the Tiptronic programme to select a lower gear.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **If you must stop on a hill, always hold the vehicle using the footbrake to avoid rolling back.**
- **The footbrake must not be held for a long period of time, not even lightly; continuous braking will cause overheating of the brakes and a reduction or even a loss of braking power and a significant increase in braking distances.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to coast down a gradient with the selector lever in positions N or D, even when the engine is not running. For descents, the use of the Tiptronic programme is recommended to keep the speed reduced.**

**Caution**

- Never use the automatic gearbox to hold the vehicle stationary on a hill, even for short periods, as this may overheat the gearbox and cause damage. Apply the handbrake or depress the foot brake to hold the vehicle in position.
- If the vehicle is allowed to roll with the engine stopped but the selector in position N then the gearbox may be damaged because it will not be lubricated. ■

## Using the Tiptronic gear system

*The Tiptronic system allows the driver to manually select gears*

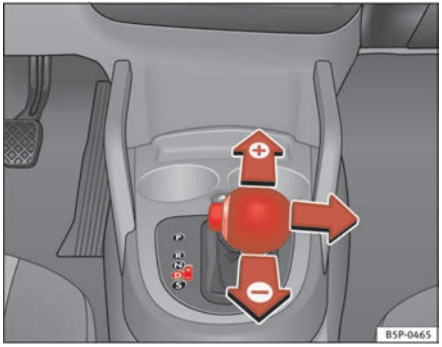


**Fig. 145 Changing gear with Tiptronic**

**Fig. 146 Steering wheel with levers for automatic gearbox**

General information about driving in Tiptronic mode

**Changing gear with the gear stick**

– Put the lever in position **D** and press towards the right to enter the Tiptronic gate ⇒ page 175, fig. 145.

– Press the gear lever forwards (+) to select a higher gear.

– Press the gear lever back (-) to select a lower gear.

**Changing gear with the steering wheel levers**

– Press the right paddle (+) towards the steering wheel to change up ⇒ page 175, fig. 146.

– Press the left paddle (–) towards the steering wheel to change down ⇒ page 175, fig. 146.

Using the levers on the steering wheel, you can access manual driving mode regardless of the driving mode pre-selected.

**General information about driving in Tiptronic mode**

When accelerating, the automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox goes into a higher gear a little before it reaches the maximum permitted revolutions.

If a lower gear is selected, the automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox does not change down until the point is reached where the engine could no longer overrev.

If the “Tiptronic” is selected whilst the vehicle is in motion and the automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox is in 3rd gear in selector lever position **D**, the “Tiptronic” will then also be in 3rd gear.

**Note**

- The gearbox controls on the steering wheel can operate with the gear stick in any position and with the vehicle in motion. ■

# Handbrake

## Using the handbrake

*The handbrake should be applied firmly to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling away.*

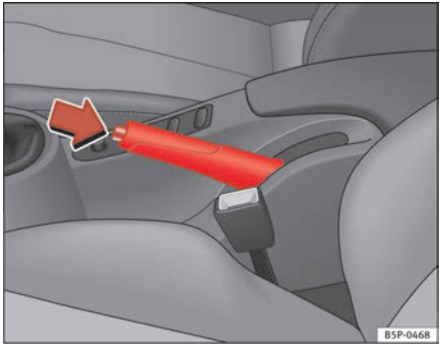


**Fig. 147 Handbrake between the front seats**

Always apply the handbrake when you leave your vehicle and when you park. ▶

### Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up firmly ⇒ page 176, fig. 147.

### Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the lever up slightly and press the release knob in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 176, fig. 147 and guide the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ ⚠.

Always apply the handbrake *firmly*. This prevents you driving with the handbrake applied ⇒ ⚠.

The handbrake warning lamp (!) lights up when the handbrake is applied and the ignition switched on. The warning turns off when the handbrake is released.

If you drive faster than 6 km/h with the handbrake on, the following message* will appear on the instrument panel display: **HANDBRAKE ON.** Also, an audible warning is given.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never use the handbrake to stop the vehicle when it is in motion. The braking distance is considerably longer, because braking is only applied to the rear wheels. Risk of accident!**
- **If it is only partially released, this will cause rear brakes overheating, which can impair the function of the brake system and could lead to an accident. This also causes premature wear on the rear brake pads.**

**(!) Caution**

Always apply the handbrake before you leave the vehicle. The first gear should also be selected. ■

## Parking

*The handbrake should always be firmly applied when the vehicle is parked.*

Always note the following points when parking the vehicle:

– Use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.

– Apply the handbrake.

– The first gear should also be selected.

– Switch the engine off and remove the key from the ignition lock. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.

– Always take you car keys with you when you leave the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

**Additional notes on parking the vehicle on gradients:**

Turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle rolls against the kerb if it started to roll.

- If the vehicle is parked facing **downhill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *towards the kerb*.
- If the vehicle is parked facing **uphill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *away from the kerb*.
- Secure the vehicle as normal by applying the handbrake firmly and engaging first gear.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Take measures to reduce the risk of injury when you leave your vehicle unattended.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite inflammable materials, such as dry grass, low bushes, spilt fuel etc.**
- **Never allow vehicle occupants to remain in the vehicle when it is locked. They would be unable to open the vehicle from the inside, and could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. In the event of an emergency, locked doors will delay assistance to occupants.**
- **Never leave children alone in the vehicle. They could set the vehicle in motion, for example, by releasing the handbrake or the gear lever / selector lever.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.** ■

## Starting on an uphill*

*This function is only included in vehicles fitted with ESP.*

This device helps when starting uphill.

These are the basic operation conditions: doors closed, brake pedal pressed down and vehicle in neutral. The system gets activated on engaging gear.

After removing your foot from the brake pedal, the braking force is maintained for a few seconds to prevent the vehicle from moving backward when put into gear. This short space of time is enough to start the vehicle with ease.

This system also works when reversing uphill.

**WARNING**

- **If you do not start the vehicle immediately after taking your foot off the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll back under certain conditions. Depress the brake pedal or use the hand brake immediately.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **If the engine stalls, depress the brake pedal or use the hand brake immediately.**
- **When following a line of traffic uphill, if you want to prevent the vehicle from rolling back accidentally when starting off, hold the brake pedal down for a few seconds before starting off.**

**Note**

The Official Service or a specialist workshop can tell you if your vehicle is equipped with this system. ■

# Parking aid acoustic system*

## Rear parking aid

*The parking aid system will use an acoustic signal to warn of the approach of any object towards the rear of the vehicle.*

### Description

The acoustic parking aid system will measure the distance between the rear of the vehicle and any possible obstacle using four ultrasonic sensors located on the rear bumper. The measuring range of the sensors starts at **approximately and depending on the nature of the obstacle** at a distance of:

- side of the rear bumper: 0.8 m
- middle of the rear bumper: 1.5 m

### Activation

The system is activated by engagement of the reverse gear. A brief acoustic signal confirms the activation and correct function of the system. ▶

**Reverse gear**

The distance warning will begin as soon as an obstacle is detected by the system. The frequency of the bleeps emitted by the system will increase rapidly as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

Within a short distance of about 25 cm, a continuous signal sounds (stop signal). The driver should not reverse any further.

**Trailer towing**

For factory-fitted vehicles eith a towing bar, the parking aid system will not be activated by the engagement of the reverse gear when pulling a trailer, as the trailer's electric connecter will be plugged into the vehicle.

**Possible faults**

If a continuous bleep sounds for some seconds when the reverse gear is engaged, this indicates that there is a fault in the parking aid system.

If the fault continues until the ignition is turned off, the acoustic signal warning of the fault will not be emitted every time the system is reactivated (by engaging the reverse gear). Thus, the system ready indication will not sound either. Have the fault repaired by an Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible.

If there is no ready signal or no acoustic warning signal, then the parking aid loudspeaker is faulty and may not warn of obstacles.

To ensure that the system works properly, the sensors must be kept clean and free of ice and snow.

**WARNING**

- **The sensors have blind spots in which obstacles may not be detected.**
- **Always look out for small children and animals because the system will not always detect them. Always pay attention when reversing to avoid accidents.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The parking aid is not a replacement for driver awareness. The driver must take full responsibility for parking and other manoeuvres.**

**Caution**

- Please note that low obstacles detected by the system may no longer be registered by the sensors as the car moves closer, so the system will not give any further warning. Certain kinds of obstacles (such as wire fences, chains, thin posts or trailer draw bars, high kerbs or painted railings etc) may not always be detected by the system, so there is a risk of damaging the vehicle in such cases.
- In some cases, obstacles with uniform edges and bumps may not be detected immediately by the system due to their geometry. Take special care of this type of obstacle such as corners, rectangular objects, etc.., these can cause damage to the vehicle.
- Be especially careful when manoeuvring into a corner between two perpendicular walls. Survey the approach of the wall to the side of the vehicle (using the mirrors)
- The parking aid system does not replace use of the mirrors for manoeuvres.
- Distant ultra-sonic sources (hammers, tyres, construction machinery, other vehicles with PDC) may interfere with the operation of the system.
- Periodic cleaning of the sensors, take care not to damage or scratch them. When cleaning with high pressure washers or steam cleaners, the sensors should be sprayed for only a very short period and from a distance of more than 10 cm. ■

# Cruise control system (CCS)*

## Description

*The cruise control system is able to maintain the set speed in the range from approx. 30 km/h to 180 km/h.*

Once the speed setting has been saved, you may take your foot off the accelerator.

**WARNING**

**It could be dangerous to use the cruise control system if it is not possible to drive at constant speed.**

- **For safety reasons the cruise control system should not be used in dense traffic, in sections with bends or where roads are in bad conditions (e.g. aquaplanning, loose chippings, slippery surfaces, snow). Risk of accident.**
- **Always switch the CCS off when finish to use it in order to avoid an involuntary use.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident.**

**Note**

The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when descending downhills. The vehicle will accelerate due to its own weight. Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle. ■

## Switching the cruise control system on and off

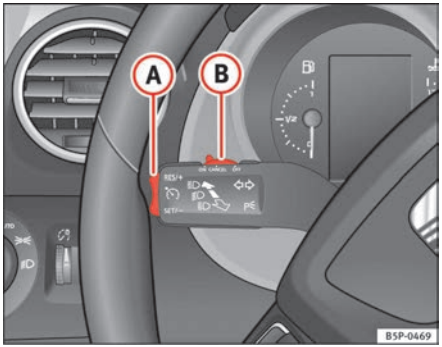


**Fig. 148 Indicator and main beam headlight lever: switch and rocker switch for the cruise control**

### Switching on the system

– Push the switch ⇒ fig. 148 (B) to the left to **ON**.

### Switching off system

– Either push the switch (B) to the right to **OFF** or turn the ignition off when the vehicle is stationary.

When the cruise control is on and a speed is programmed, the indicator on the instrument panel is lit.[19)]

If the cruise control system is *switched off*, the symbol is switched off. The system will also be fully switched off when the **1st** gear is selected.* ■

[19)] Depending on the version of the model.

## Setting speed*

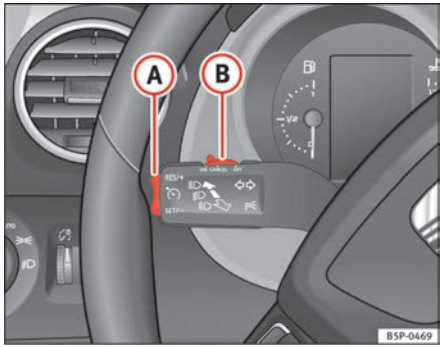


Fig. 149 Indicator and main beam headlight lever: switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

– Press the lower part **SET/-** of the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 149 (A) once briefly when you have reached the speed you wish to set.

When you release the rocker switch, the current speed is set and held constant. ■

## Adjusting set speed*

*The speed can be altered without touching the accelerator or the brake.*

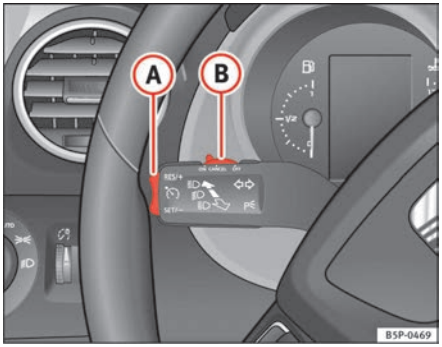


Fig. 150 Indicator and main beam headlight lever: switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

### Setting a higher speed

– Press the upper part **RES/+** of the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 150 (A) to increase the speed. The vehicle will continue to accelerate as long as you keep the rocker switch pressed. When you release the switch, the new speed is stored.

### Setting a lower speed

– Press the lower part **SET/–** of the rocker switch (A) to reduce the speed. The vehicle will automatically reduce its speed for as long as you keep the switch pressed. When you release the switch, the new speed is stored. ▶

When you increase speed with the accelerator and then release the pedal, the system will automatically restore the set speed. This will not be the case, however, if the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h higher than the stored speed for longer than 5 minutes. The speed will have to be stored again.

Control of the set speed is switched off if you reduce speed by depressing the brake pedal. You can reactivate the control by pressing once on the upper part of the rocker switch **RES/+** ⇒ page 181, fig. 150 (A).

**WARNING**

**It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident.** ■

## Switching off system temporarily*

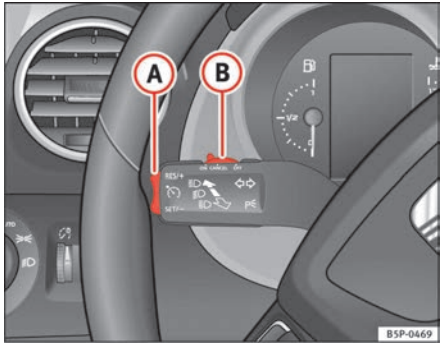


**Fig. 151 Indicator and main beam headlight lever switch and rocker switch for the cruise control**

The cruise control system will be switched off in the following situations:

- if the brake pedal is depressed,
- if the clutch pedal is depressed,
- if the vehicle is accelerated to over 180 km/h,
- when the lever (B) is moved to the position “CANCEL” without reaching the “OFF” position. Once the “CANCEL” operation is completed, the lever is released and returns to its initial position.

To resume the cruise control, release the brake or clutch pedal or reduce the vehicle speed to less than 180 km/h and press once on the upper part of the rocker switch **RES/+** ⇒ fig. 151 (A).

**WARNING**

**It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident.** ■

## Turning off the cruise control system*

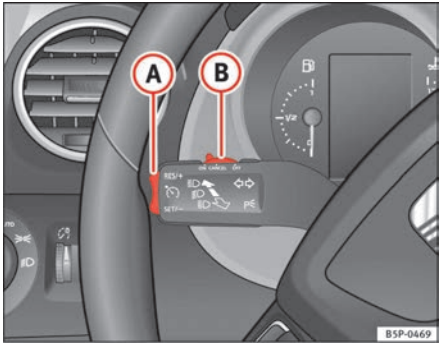


**Fig. 152 Indicator and main beam headlight lever: switch and rocker switch for the cruise control**

**Vehicles with a manual gearbox**

The system **is completely turned off** by moving the control (B) all the way to the right hand side (OFF engaged), or when the vehicle is stationary, ignition off.

**Vehicles with automatic gearbox / DSG* automatic gearbox**

To completely disengage the system, the selector lever must be placed in one of the following positions: **P**, **N**, **R** or **1** or with the vehicle stopped and the ignition turned off. ■

# Practical tips

## Intelligent technology

### Brakes

#### Brake servo

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It works **only when the engine is running**.

If the brake servo is not functioning due to a malfunction, or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder to make up for the lack of servo assistance.

**WARNING**

**The braking distance can also be affected by external factors.**

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off. Failure to do so could result in an accident. The braking distance is increased considerably as the brake servo does not function.**
- **If the brake servo is not working, for example when the vehicle is being towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder than normal.** ■

#### Brake assist system (BAS)*

In an emergency, most drivers brake in time, but not with maximum force. This results in unnecessarily long braking distances.

The brake assist system intervenes when you press the brake pedal very quickly because the brake assist system registers an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up the full brake pressure so that the ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently, thus reducing the braking distance.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The brake assist system switches off automatically as soon as you release the brake.

**Emergency braking function**

When the vehicle detects sudden braking, the hazard warning lights automatically come on to warn vehicles behind. The hazard warning lights go off when the vehicle accelerates or the hazard warning light switch is pressed.

**WARNING**

- **The risk of accident is higher if you drive too fast, if you do not keep your distance to the vehicle in front, and when the road surface is slippery or wet. The increased accident risk cannot be reduced by the brake assist system.**
- **The brake assist system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with the brake assist system! Therefore, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.** ■

# Anti-lock brake system and traction control M-ABS (ABS and TCS)

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

*The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels locking during braking.*

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) is an important part of the vehicle's active safety system.

**How the ABS works**

If one of the wheels is turns too slowly in relation to the road speed, and is close to locking, the system will reduce the braking pressure for this wheel. The driver is made aware of this control process by a **pulsating of the brake pedal** and audible noise. This is a deliberate warning to the driver that one or more of the wheels is tending to lock and the ABS control function has intervened. In this situation it is important to keep the brake pedal fully depressed so the ABS can regulate the brake application. Do not “pump”.

If you brake hard on a slippery road surface, the best possible control is retained as the wheels do not lock.

However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering a slippery surface.

**WARNING**

- **The anti-lock brake system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ABS! If you notice that the ABS is working (to counteract locked wheels under braking), you should reduce speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The effectiveness of ABS is also determined by the tyres fitted** **⇒ page 232.**
- **If the running gear or brakes are modified, the effectiveness of the ABS could be severely limited.** ■

## Traction control system (TCS)*

*The traction control system prevents the drive wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating.*

**Description and operation of the traction control system during acceleration (TCS)**

TCS reduces engine power to help prevent the drive wheels of front-wheel drive vehicles losing traction during acceleration. The system works in the entire speed range in conjunction with ABS. If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the TCS will also be out of action.

TCS helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The TCS is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If necessary, it may be turned on or off pushing the button on the centre console.

When the TCS is off, the warning lamp is lit. The TCS should normally be left switched on at all times. Only in exceptional circumstances, when slipping of the wheels is required, should it be disconnected for example

- With compact temporary spare wheel.
- When using the snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces
- When the vehicle is bogged-down, to free it by “rocking.”

The TCS should be switched on again afterwards as soon as possible.

**WARNING**

- **It must be remembered that TCS cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by TCS tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

**Caution**

- In order to ensure that TCS function correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the ABS and TCS. ■

## XDS*

*Driveshaft differential*

When taking a bend, the driveshaft differential mechanism allows the outer wheel to turn at a higher speed than the inner wheel. In this way, the wheel which is turning faster (outer wheel) receives less drive torque than the inner wheel. This may mean that in certain situations the torque provided to the inner wheel is too high, causing the wheels to spin. On the other hand, the outer wheel receives a lower drive torque than it could transmit. This causes an overall loss of lateral grip on the front shaft, resulting in understeering or “lengthening” of the path.

The XDS system is able, using the ESP sensors and signals, to detect and correct this effect.

The XDS, via the ESP, brakes the inner wheel thus counteracting the excess drive torque in this wheel. This means that the path requested by the driver is more precise,

The XDS system operates in combination with the ESP and is always active, even when the traction control, TCS, is disconnected. ■

# Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

## General notes

*The electronic stabilisation programme increases the vehicle's stability on the road.*

The electronic stabilisation programme helps to reduce the danger of skidding.

The electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) consists of **ABS, EDL, TCS and Steering manoeuvre recommendations.**

**Electronic Stabilising Program (ESP)***

ESP reduces the danger of skidding by braking the wheels individually.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If the desired course is not being maintained (for instance, if the car is starting to skid), then the ESP compensates automatically by braking the appropriate wheel.

The forces acting on the braked wheel bring the vehicle back to a stable condition. If the vehicle tends to oversteer, the system will act on the front wheel on the outside of the turn. ▶

**Steering manoeuvre recommendations**

This is a complementary safety function included in the ESP This function aids the driver to better stabilize the vehicle in a critical situation. For example, in case of sudden braking surface with varied adherence, the vehicle will tend to destabilize its trajectory to the right to or to the left. In this case the ESP recognizes the situation and helps the driver with a counter steering manoeuvre from the power steering.

This function simply provides the driver with a recommended manoeuvre in critical situations.

The vehicle doesn't steer itself with this function, the driver has full control of the vehicle at all times.

**WARNING**

- **It must be remembered that ESP cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

**Caution**

- In order to ensure that ESP functions correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the ABS, EDL, ESP and TCS. ■

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels locking during braking ⇒ page 186. ■

## Electronic differential lock (EDL)*

*The electronic differential lock helps prevent the loss of traction caused if one of the driven wheels starts spinning.*

EDL helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The system will control the revolutions of the drive wheels using the ABS sensors (in case of an EDL fault the warning lamp for ABS lights up) ⇒ page 79.

At speeds of up to approximately 80 km/h, it is able to balance out differences in the speed of the driven wheels of approximately 100 rpm caused by a slippery road surface on *one side* of the vehicle. It does this by braking the wheel which has lost traction and distributing more driving force to the other driven wheel via the differential.

To prevent the disc brake of the braking wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. For this reason, the driver is not informed that the EDL has been switched off.

The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

**WARNING**

- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. Despite EDL, the driven wheels may start to spin. This could impair the vehicle's stability.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Always adapt your driving style to suit road conditions and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by EDL tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

**Caution**

Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the EDL ⇒ page 210. ■

## The traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system prevents the drive wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating ⇒ page 186. ■

## Four-wheel drive*

*On four-wheel drive models, the engine power is distributed to all four wheels*

### General notes

The four-wheel-drive system operates completely automatically. The propulsion force is distributed among the four wheels and adapted to the driving style and the road conditions.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice.

### Winter tyres

Thanks to its four-wheel drive, your car will have plenty of traction in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, we still recommend that winter tyres or all-season tyres should be fitted on all four wheels when winter road conditions are expected, mainly because this will give a better braking response.

### Snow chains

On roads where snow chains are mandatory, this also applies to cars with four-wheel drive.

### Changing tyres

On vehicles with four-wheel drive, all four tyres must have the same rolling circumference ⇒ page 237.

**WARNING**

- **Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **The braking capability of your vehicle is limited by the tyres' grip. Vehicle behaviour is no different from a vehicle without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast on icy or slippery roads just because the car still has good acceleration in these conditions. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed when “aquaplaning” begins to warn the driver, as with a front-wheel drive car. For this reason and for that mentioned above, always choose a driving speed suitable for the road conditions. Failure to do so could result in an accident.** ■

## Brakes

### *What factors can have a negative effect on the brakes?*

**New brake pads**

New brake pads do not provide optimal performance during the first 400 km they must be “run in”. However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder. Avoid overloading the brakes during run-in.

**Wear**

The rate of wear on the **brake pads** depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. Negative factors are, for instance, city traffic, frequent short trips or hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

**Wet roads; road salt**

When the velocity is *over* 80 km/h windscreen wipers are *on*, the brake system moves the pads towards the brake discs for a few seconds. This occurs - without warning to the driver - at regular intervals and requires a more rapid response from the brakes when driving on wet roads.

In certain conditions, such as in heavy rain, or after washing the car or driving through water, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads. The brakes should be “dried” by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

The effectiveness of the brakes can also be temporarily reduced if the car is driven for some distance without using the brakes when there is a lot of salt on the road in winter. In this case, the layer of salt on the brake discs and pads has to wear off before braking.

**Corrosion**

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages without using the brakes very much.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if rust has formed on the disks, it is advisable to clean off the pads and disks by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ ⚠.

**Faults in the brake system**

If the brake pedal travel should ever increase *suddenly*, this may mean that one of the two brake circuits has failed. Drive immediately to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. On the way to the dealer, be prepared to use more pressure on the brake pedal, and allow for longer stopping distances.

**Low brake fluid level**

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

**Brake servo**

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. The brake servo works only when the engine is running.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to inconvenience or endanger other road users. Risk of accident.**
- **Ensure the vehicle does not move while in neutral, when the motor is stopped. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**

**Caution**

- Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This overheats the brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and change to a lower gear (or move the selector lever to a lower gear position if your car has automatic transmission). This makes use of engine braking ▶

and prolongs the service life of the brakes. If you still have to use the brakes, it is better to brake firmly at intervals than to apply the brakes continuously.

**Note**

- If the brake servo is not functioning due to a malfunction, or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder to make up for the lack of servo assistance.
- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the front wheels is not obstructed, otherwise the brakes can overheat. ■

## Power steering (servotronic*)

*The power steering assists the driver when turning the steering wheel (with the engine running).*

The power steering assists the driver by reducing the force needed to turn the steering wheel. In cars equipped with servotronic* power steering the degree of power assistance is regulated *electronically* according to road speed.

The power *steering* will keep on working even if the *servotronic** device fails. The degree of power assistance will, however, no longer adapt to different speeds. If the electronic regulating system is not working properly, this is most noticeable when turning the steering wheel at low speeds (for instance when parking) – more effort will be required than usual. The fault should be corrected by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

The power steering does not work if the engine is off. In this case the steering wheel is very hard to turn.

If the steering is held at its *turning limit* when the car is stationary, this will place an excessive load on the power steering system. Turning the steering wheel to its limit places a load on the system, which causes noise. It will also reduce the idling speed of the engine.

**Caution**

When the engine is running, do not turn the steering wheel to its limit for more than 15 seconds. Otherwise, there is a risk of damaging the power steering.

**Note**

- If the power steering should fail at any time or the engine is switched off (for instance when being towed), the car can still be steered. However, more effort will be required to turn the steering wheel.
- If the system is leaking or malfunctioning, please take the car to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- The power steering requires a special hydraulic fluid. The container is located in the engine compartment (front left). The correct fluid level in the reservoir is important for the power steering to function properly. The hydraulic fluid level is checked at the Inspection Service. ■

# Driving and the environment

## Running-in

### Running in a new engine

*The engine needs to be run-in over the first 1,500 km.*

**Up to 1,000 kilometres**

– Do not drive faster than two thirds of top speed.

– Do not accelerate hard.

– Avoid high engine revolutions.

– Do not tow a trailer.

**From 1000 to 1500 km**

– Speeds can be *gradually* increased to the maximum road speed or maximum permissible engine speed (rpm).

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on, when all the moving parts have bedded in.

**For the sake of the environment**

If the engine is run in gently, its life will be increased and its oil consumption, reduced. ■

### Braking effect and braking distance

*The braking effect and braking distance are influenced by driving situations and road conditions.*

The efficiency of the brakes depends directly on the **brake pad** wear. The rate of wear of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. If you often drive in town traffic, drive short distances or have a sporty driving style, we recommend that you have the thickness of your brake pads checked by an Authorised Service Centre more frequently than recommended in the Service Schedule.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example, after crossing water areas, in heavy rainfall or even after washing the car, the effect of the brakes is lessened as the brake discs are wet or even frozen (in winter): The brakes should be "dried" by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

**WARNING**

**Longer braking distances and faults in the brake system increase the risk of accidents.**

- **New brake pads must be run in and do not have the correct friction during the first 400 km. However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder. This also applies when new brake pads are fitted.**
- **If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been gritted with salt, braking power may set in later than normal.**
- **On steep stopes, if brakes are excessively used, they will overheat. Before driving down a long steep stopes, it is advisable to reduce speed and change down into a lower gear (or move the selector lever to a lower**

**WARNING (continued)**

**gear if your vehicle has automatic transmission). This makes use of engine braking and relieves the brakes.**

- **Never let the brakes "rub" by applying light pressure. Continuous braking will cause the brakes to overheat and the braking distance will increase. Apply and then release the brakes alternately.**
- **Never let the vehicle run with the engine switched off. The braking distance is increased considerably as the brake servo does not function.**
- **Very heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This impairs the braking effect.**
- **Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat. Observe the relevant instructions before purchasing accessories ⇒ page 210, "Technical modifications".**
- **If a brake circuit fails, the braking distance will be increased considerably. Contact a qualified workshop immediately and avoid unnecessary journeys.** ■

# Exhaust gasses purification system

## Catalytic converter*

**To conserve the useful life of the catalytic converter**

– Always use unleaded petrol.

– Do not let the fuel get too low in the tank.

– For engine oil changes, do not top the reservoir up ⇒ page 220, "Topping up engine oil".

– Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jump leads if necessary ⇒ page 264.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. In general, the exhaust warning lamp will light up when any of the described symptoms occur ⇒ page 75. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the environment. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

**WARNING**

**The catalytic converter reaches very high temperatures! Fire hazard!**

- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with dry grass or inflammable materials under the vehicle.**
- **Do not apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. These materials could catch fire when the vehicle is being driven.**

**Caution**

Never fully drain the fuel tank because the irregularity of the fuel supply may cause ignition problems. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage the catalytic converter.

**For the sake of the environment**

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust under some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel used. Quite often the problem can be solved by changing to another fuel brand. ■

## Diesel engine particulate filter*

*The diesel engine particulate filter eliminates soot produced by burning diesel.*

The diesel engine dust filter eliminates most of the soot from the exhaust gas system. Under normal driving conditions, the filter cleans itself. If the driving conditions do not allow the filter to clean itself (for example, multiple short trips) the filter will be obstructed by dust and pollen and the indicator for the diesel engine particulate filter indicator will light. See under Warning Lights.

**WARNING**

- **The diesel engine particulate filter may reach extremely high temperatures; it should not enter into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle. Failure to comply could result in fire.**

**Caution**

- The vehicle is not designed for refuelling with mixtures of FAME fuel (biodiesel) over 7% in accordance with DIN 51628. The diesel particle filter is damaged when this mixture percentage is exceeded. ■

# Economical and ecological driving

## Economical and environmental driving

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depends in large part on your driving style. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. Next, we provide you with some tips in order to help reduce contamination and, at the same time, save money.

**Driving ahead of the circumstances**

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. When you anticipate the situation, you have to brake less often and, thus, accelerate less. If it is possible, let the vehicle roll with a **gear engaged**, for example, if you see a red light ahead. The braking effect preserves brakes and tyres from wear; the emissions and fuel consumption are reduced to zero (disconnection out of inertia).

**Change gear early to save energy**

An effective way of saving fuel is to change up *quickly* through the gears. Running the engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel.

**Manual gearbox:** Change from first to second gear as quickly as possible. We recommend that, whenever possible, you change to a higher gear upon reaching 2,000 rpm.

**Automatic gearbox:** Accelerate in moderation and avoid the “kick-down” position.

**Avoid driving at high speed**

We advise you not to drive at the top speed permitted by the vehicle. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

**Avoid idling**

It is worthwhile switching off the engine when waiting in a traffic jam, at level crossings or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a very long time to warm up when it is running at idling speed. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high ▶

during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

**Periodic maintenance**

Periodic maintenance work guarantees that, before beginning a journey, you will not waste fuel. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

**Avoid short journeys**

To reduce the consumption and emission of polluting gases, the engine and the exhaust filtration systems should reach the optimum **service temperature**.

With the engine cold, fuel consumption is proportionally higher. The engine does not warm up and fuel consumption does not regularise until having driven some *four* kilometres. This is the reason why we recommend avoiding short trips wherever possible.

**Maintain the correct tyre pressures**

Bear in mind that keeping the tyres at an adequate pressure saves fuel. If the tyre pressures are just 1 bar too low, this can put the fuel consumption up by as much as 5 %. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases **tyre wear** and impairs handling.

The tyre pressures should always be checked when the tyres are *cold*.

Do not use **winter tyres** all through the year: they will increase fuel consumption by up to 10 %.

**Avoid unnecessary weight**

Every kilo of **extra weight** will put up the fuel consumption, so it is worth checking the luggage compartment occasionally to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

A roof carrier is often left in place for the sake of convenience, even when it is no longer needed. At a speed of 100-120 km/h your car will use about 12% more fuel as a result of the extra wind resistance caused by the roof carrier even when it is empty.

**Save electrical energy**

The engine activates the alternator, which produces electricity. With the need for electricity, fuel consumption is also increased. Because of this, always turn off electrical equipment when you do not need them. Examples of equipment that use a lot of electricity are: the fan at high speeds, the rear window heating or the seat heaters*. ■

## Environmental friendliness

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and production of your new Seat.

**Design measures for economical recycling**

- Joints and connections designed for ease of dismantling
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling
- Increased use of single-grade materials
- Plastic parts and elastomers are labelled in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629

**Choice of materials**

- Nearly all materials used can be recycled
- Similar types of plastics grouped together for easy recycling
- Recycled materials used in manufacture
- Reduction of the plastic volatile components
- CFC-free refrigerant in air conditioning

**Compliance with prohibited materials laws**: cadmium, asbestos, lead, mercury, chrome VI.

**Manufacturing methods**

- Use of recycled material for manufacturing plastic parts
- Solvent-free cavity sealing
- Solvent-free wax for protecting the vehicles in transit
- Solvent-free adhesives
- No CFCs used in production
- Surplus materials used extensively for energy conversion and building materials
- Overall water consumption reduced
- Heat recovery systems
- Water-soluble paint ■

# Driving abroad

## Observations

To drive abroad, the following must be taken into consideration:

- For vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter ensure that unleaded petrol is available for the journey. See the chapter “Refuelling”. Automobile organisations will have information about service station networks selling unleaded fuel.
- In some countries it is possible that a vehicle model is sold under conditions where some spare parts are not available or that the Authorised Service Centres may only carry out limited repairs.

SEAT importers and distributors will gladly provide information about the technical preparation of your vehicle and also about necessary maintenance and repair possibilities. ■

## Adhesive strips for headlights

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights will dazzle oncoming traffic.

To prevent dazzling, you must apply stickers to certain parts of the headlight lenses. Further information is available in your Authorised Service Centre.

In vehicles with self-directing headlights, the rotation system must previously be disconnected. To do this, please go to a specialist workshop. ■

# Trailer towing

## Instructions to follow

Your vehicle may be used to tow a trailer when fitted with the correct equipment.

If the car is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements for towing a trailer. For the **after-market fitting** of a trailer towing bracket see ⇒ page 199.

### Connectors

Your vehicle is fitted with a 12-pin connector for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle.

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use an adapter cable. This is available in any SEAT dealer.

### Trailer weight / draw bar loading

Never exceed the authorised towing limit. If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper slopes.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1,000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the vehicle's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density. The maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the vehicle and trailer combination must be reduced by 10% for every further 1,000 m (or part thereof). The gross combination weight is the actual weight of the laden vehicle plus the actual weight of the laden trailer. When possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted **draw bar weight** on the ball joint of the towing bracket, but do not exceed the specified limit.

The figures for **trailer weights** and **draw bar weights** that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct figures for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures for the towing bracket, are given in the registration documents ⇒ Section “Technical data”.

### Distributing the load

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Loads carried in the trailer must be secured to prevent them moving.

### Tyre pressure

Set tyre pressure to the maximum permissible pressure shown on the sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Set the tyre pressure of the trailer tyres in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's recommendations.

### Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard mirrors. If this is not the case, you should have additional mirrors fitted. Both exterior mirrors should be mounted on hinged extension brackets. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

**WARNING**

**Never transport people in a trailer. This could result in fatal accidents.**

**Note**

- Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. We recommend additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.

- Find out whether special regulations apply to towing a trailer in your country. ■

## Ball coupling of towing bracket*

Depending on the model version, the spherical head on the trailer hook may be stored in the tool box.

The ball coupling is provided with instructions on fitting and removing the ball coupling of the towing bracket.

**WARNING**

**The towing bracket ball coupling must be stored securely in the luggage compartment to prevent them being flung through the vehicle and causing injury.**

**Note**

- By law, the ball coupling must be removed if a trailer is not being towed and it obscures the number plate. ■

## Driving tips

*Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.*

**Weight distribution**

The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle is very unfavourable. However, if this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.

**Speed**

The stability of the vehicle and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason, it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible speed in an unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially when driving downhill.

You should always reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of **snaking**. Never try to stop the “snaking” by increasing speed.

Always brake in due course. If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then, firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking. Select a low gear in due course before going down a steep downhill. This enables you to use the engine braking to slow down the vehicle.

**Reheating**

At very high temperatures and during prolonged ascents, driving in a low gear and high engine speed, always monitor the temperature indicator for the coolant ⇒ page 55.

**Electronic Stabilisation Program***

The ESP* system makes it easier to stabilise the trailer in case it skids or swings. ■

## Fitting a towing bracket*

*It is possible to fit a towing bracket to the rear of the vehicle.*

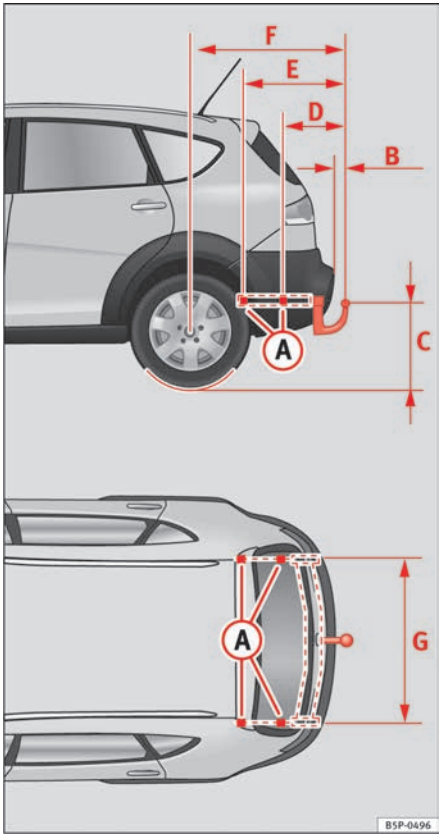


Fig. 153 Attachment points for towing bracket

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the vehicle is purchased, this must be completed according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

The attachment points for the towing bracket (A) are on the lower part of the vehicle.

The distance between the centre of the ball coupling and the ground should never be lower than the indicated value, even with a fully loaded vehicle and including the maximum resting weight.

Elevation values for securing the towing bracket:

(B) 65 mm (minimum)
(C) 350 mm to 420 mm (fully laden vehicle)
(D) 344 mm
(E) 531 mm
(F) 1,044 mm
(G) 1,040 mm

**Fitting a towing bracket**

- Driving with a trailer involves an extra effort for the vehicle. Therefore, before fitting a towing bracket, please contact an Authorised Service Centre to check whether your cooling system needs modification.
- Submit to the legal requirements in your country (e.g. the fitting of a separate warning lamp).
- Certain vehicle components, e.g. the rear bumper, must be removed and reinstalled. The towing bracket securing bolts must be tightened using a torque wrench, and an electrical socket must be connected to the vehicle's electrical system. The above-mentioned require specialized knowledge and tools.
- Figures in the illustration show the elevation value and the attachment points which must be considered if you are retrofitting a towing bracket.

**WARNING**

**Towing brackets should be fitted by specialists.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **If the towing bracket is incorrectly installed, there is serious danger of accident.**
- **For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.**

**Caution**

- If the electrical socket is incorrectly installed, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system. ■

# Your vehicle maintenance and cleaning

## General notes

*Regular washing and care help maintain the value of your vehicle.*

**Your vehicle maintenance**

Regular care and washing help to **maintain the value** of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for acknowledging warranty claims in the event of bodywork corrosion or paint defects.

The best way to protect the car against environmental contaminants is to wash and wax it *frequently*. The longer substances such as insects remains, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials remain on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect.

After winter, a period when salt is put on the roads, it is important to have the **underside** of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

**Products for vehicle maintenance**

Car care products are available in your Authorised Service Centre. Keep the product instructions until you have used them up.

**WARNING**

- **Car care products can be toxic. For this, they must always be kept closed in their original container. Keep them out of the reach of children. Failure to comply could result in poisoning.**
- **Always read and observe the instructions and warnings on the package before using car care products. Improper use could damage your health or**

**WARNING (continued)**

**your vehicle. The use of certain products may produce noxious vapours; they should be used in well ventilated areas.**

- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids. These are toxic and highly flammable. Risk of fire and explosion.**
- **Before washing your vehicle, or carrying out any maintenance, switch the engine off, apply your handbrake firmly and remove the key from the ignition.**

**Caution**

Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning purposes. This could damage the paintwork or the windows of your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water.

**For the sake of the environment**

- When purchasing products for your vehicle maintenance, select the ones which are not harmful to the environment.
- The leftovers of the car care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. Observe the disposal information on the package. ■

# Vehicle exterior maintenance

## Automatic car wash tunnel

*The car can normally be washed without problem in an automatic car wash.*

The vehicle paintwork is so durable that the car can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car washing tunnel. However, the paintwork wear depends to a large extent, on the kind of the car washing tunnel, the brushes used, its water filtering and the type of cleaning and preservative products.

Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows and sunroof. There is nothing to note apart from that.

If the vehicle has special accessories such as spoilers or a roof carrier or two-way radio aerial, etc., it is advisable to consult the car washing tunnel operator.

After washing, the **brakes** could hesitate to respond as the brake discs and pads could be wet, or even frozen in winter. “Dry” the brakes by braking several times.

**WARNING**

**Water, ice and salt on the brakes can reduce braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

**Caution**

If an automatic car wash tunnel is used, before entering the tunnel, put the aerial down parallel to the roof and do not tighten to avoid damage. ■

## Washing by hand

### Vehicle washing

– First soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse it off.

– Clean your vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge, a glove or a brush. Use very light pressure.

– Rinse the sponge or glove often with clean water.

– Special car shampoo should only be used for very stubborn dirt.

– Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. until last with a different sponge or glove.

– Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water.

– Dry your vehicle surface gently with a chamois leather.

– When **temperature is cold**, dry the rubber seals and its surfaces to prevent them from freezing. Apply silicone spray to the rubber seals.

### After washing

– Directly after washing, avoid sudden and sharp braking. “Dry” ⇒ page 192, “Braking effect and braking distance”the brakes by braking several times.

**WARNING**

- **Wash your car with the ignition switched off.**
- **Protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings etc. Risk of injury.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Water, ice and salt on the brakes can reduce braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

**Caution**

- Never remove dirt, mud or dust if the vehicle surface is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning purposes. This could scratch the paintwork or glass on your vehicle.
- Washing the vehicle in low temperatures: when washing the vehicle with a hose, do not direct water into the lock cylinders or the gaps around the doors, tailgate, or sunroof. Risk of freezing.

**For the sake of the environment**

To protect environment, the car should be washed only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic, oil-laden waste water entering the sewerage system. In some districts, washing vehicles outside wash bays is prohibited.

**Note**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. ■

## Washing the car with a high pressure cleaner

*Be particularly careful when using a high pressure cleaner!*

– Always observe the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, particularly those concerning the **pressure** and the **spraying distance**.

– Increase the spraying distance for soft materials and painted bumpers.

– Do not use a high pressure cleaner to remove ice or snow from windows ⇒ page 204.

– Never use concentrated jet nozzles (“rotating jets”) ⇒ ⚠.

– Directly after washing, avoid sudden and sharp braking. “Dry” ⇒ page 192 the brakes by braking several times.

**WARNING**

- **Never wash tyres with a concentrated jet (“rotating nozzle”). Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Water, ice and salt on the brakes can reduce braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

**Caution**

- Do not use water hotter than 60°C. This could damage the vehicle.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle, keep a sufficient distance from sensitive materials such as flexible hoses, plastic, soundproofing material, etc. This is also important for bumpers painted as the paintwork. The closer the nozzle is to the surface, the greater the wear on the material. ■

## Vehicle paint maintenance requirements

*Regular waxing protects the paintwork.*

You need to apply wax to your car if water does not form small drops and run off the paintwork when it is *clean*. ▶

A good quality *hard wax* product is available from your Authorised Service Centre.

Regular wax applications help to protect the paintwork from environmental contaminants ⇒ page 201. It is also effective in protecting against minor scratches.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly in the car washing tunnel, it is advisable to protect the paint with a hard wax coating at least twice a year. ■

## Polishing the paintwork

*Polishing brings back gloss to the paintwork.*

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax. Polishing products can be purchased in your Authorised Service Centre.

The car must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint ⇒ page 203, “Vehicle paint maintenance requirements”.

**Caution**

To prevent damage to the paintwork:

- Do not use polishes and hard wax on painted parts with a matte finish or on plastic parts.
- Do not polish your vehicle in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

## Caring for plastic parts

*Solvents damage plastic parts.*

If normal washing fails to clean plastic parts, clean them with approved **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care products.

**Caution**

- The use of liquid air freshener directly over the air vents of the vehicle may damage the plastic parts if the liquid is accidentally spilled.
- Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

## Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

### Cleaning windows

– Moisten the windows with commercially available, alcohol based glass cleaner.

– Dry the windows with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth.

### Removing snow

– Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and mirrors.

### Removing ice

– Use a de-icer spray.

Use a clean cloth or chamois leather to dry the windows. The chamois leathers used on painted surfaces are not suitable to clean windows because they are soiled with wax deposits which could smear the windows. ▶

If possible, use a de-icing spray to remove ice. If you use an ice scraper, push it in one direction only without swinging it.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to clean rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits off.

Wax deposits can be removed with a special cleaner available in your Authorised Service Centre. Wax deposits on the windscreen could cause the wiper blades to judder. If a window cleanser, specifically for removing wax, is added to the windscreen washer fluid prevents wiper blades from juddering. Wax deposits are not removed.

**Caution**

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating element for the rear window is located on the inner side of the window. To prevent damage, do not put stickers on the heating elements inside the window. ■

## Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Clean wiper blades are essential to provide clear vision.

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windscreen wiper blades.
2. Use window cleanser to clean the windscreen wiper blades. Use a sponge or a cloth to remove stubborn stains. ■

## Rubber seals maintenance

*If rubber seals are well looked after, they will not freeze so quickly.*

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.
2. Apply a specialist care product to the rubber seals.

The strips on the doors, windows, bonnet and rear lid will remain pliable and last longer if they are treated with a suitable care product (for example silicone spray).

Caring for rubber seals will also prevent premature ageing and leaks. The doors will be easier to open. If rubber seals are well looked after, they will not freeze so quickly in winter. ■

## Door lock cylinders

*The door lock cylinders can freeze up in winter.*

To de-ice the lock cylinders you should only use spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties. ■

## Cleaning chrome parts

1. Clean chrome parts with a damp cloth.
2. Polish chrome parts with a soft, dry cloth.

If this does not provide satisfying results, use a specialist **chrome cleaning product**. Chrome cleaning products will remove stains and coatings from the surface.

**Caution**

To prevent scratching chrome surfaces:

- Never use an abrasive care product on chrome.
- Do not clean or polish chrome parts in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

## Steel wheel rims

– Clean steel wheel rims regularly using a separate sponge.

Use an industrial cleanser to remove brake dust. Any damage to the paint on steel wheel rims should be repaired before starting to rust.

**WARNING**

- **Never wash tyres with a cylindrical jet. Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Water, ice and salt on the brakes can reduce braking efficiency. Risk of accident. Directly after washing, avoid sudden and sharp braking. “Dry” ⇒ page 192, “Braking effect and braking distance”the brakes by braking several times.** ■

## Cleaning alloy wheel rims

### Every two weeks

– Wash salt and brake dust from alloy wheels.

– Use an acid free detergent to clean the wheel rims.

### Every three months

– Apply a hard wax compound to the wheels.

Alloy wheels require regular attention to preserve their appearance. If road salt and brake dust are not often removed, the aluminium finish will be impaired.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheel rims.

Car polish or other abrasive agents should not be used. If the protective coating is damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

**WARNING**

- **Never wash tyres with a cylindrical jet. Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Water, ice and salt on the brakes can reduce braking efficiency. Risk of accident. Directly after washing, avoid sudden and sharp braking. “Dry” ⇒ page 192, “Braking effect and braking distance”the brakes by braking several times.** ■

## Underbody maintenance

*The vehicle underbody is coated to protect it from chemical and mechanical damage.*

The protective coating can be damaged when driving. We recommend you to ckeck the protective coating under the body and on the running gear, and reinstated if necessary, before and after the winter season.

We recommend you to go to your Authorised Service Centre to carry out repair work and additional anti-corrosion work.

**WARNING**

**Do not apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. The heat of the exhaust system or the engine could cause them to ignite! Fire hazard.** ■

## Cleaning the engine compartment

*Take special care when cleaning the engine compartment.*

**Anti-corrosion treatment**

The engine compartment and the surface of the power unit are given anti-corrosion treatment at the factory.

Good corrosion protection is particularly important in winter when the car is frequently driven on salted roads. To prevent the salt corroding the vehicle, the entire engine compartment should be thoroughly cleaned before and after winter.

**Your Authorised Service Centre** has got the necessary equipment to provide the correct cleaning and preserving products. For this reason, we recommend having this work performed by them.

The anti-corrosion protection is usually removed if the engine compartment is cleaned with grease removing solutions, or if you have the engine cleaned. On commissioning theis work, ensure that all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment are given anti-corrosion treatment.

**WARNING**

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 215.**
- **Before opening the bonnet, switch the engine off, apply the parking brake firmly and always remove the key from the ignition.**
- **Allow the engine to cool before you clean the engine compartment.**
- **Do not clean the vehicle underbody, wheel arches without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts. Failure to comply could result in injury.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. Directly after washing, avoid sudden and sharp braking.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature-controlled and could start automatically, even when the key is removed from the ignition!**

**For the sake of the environment**

Fuel, grease and oil deposits could be removed when the engine is washed. The polluted water must be cleaned in an oil separator. For this reason, engine washing should be carried out only by a qualified workshop or a petrol station. ■

# Vehicle interior maintenance

## Plastic parts and dash panel cleaning

– Use a clean, damp cloth to clean plastic parts and the dash panel.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

**WARNING**

**Never clean the dash panel and the airbag module surface with cleansers containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag triggered, disintegrating plastic parts could cause substantial injuries.**

**Caution**

Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

## Wooden trim cleaning*

– Clean the wooden trim with a water-moistened clean cloth.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a *gentle* soap solution.

**Caution**

Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

## Cloth seat covers and fabric trim cleaning

Cloth seat covers and fabric trim on the doors, headlining etc. can be cleaned with a special interior cleanser or with dry foam and a soft brush. ■

## Cleaning the radio and climate controls

To clean the radio and/or climate controls, use a soft damp cloth. For more resistant dirt, a neutral soap solution may be used. ■

## Leather cleaning*

### Normal cleaning

– Moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

### Cleaning stubborn stains

– More stubborn dirt can be removed using a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap; two tablespoons diluted in one litre of water) and a cloth.

– Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

### Leather maintenance

– The leather should be treated twice a year with a special leather-care product, available in your Authorised Service Centre. ▶

– Apply these products very sparingly.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

SEAT does everything possible to preserve the genuine qualities of this natural product. Due to the natural properties of the specially selected hides employed, the finished leather has a certain sensitivity to grease and dirt, etc. so a degree of care is required in everyday use and when looking after the leather.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the vehicle is under solar radiation for long periods, the leather should be protected to prevent it from fading. However, slight colour variations in high-quality natural leather are normal.

**Caution**

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop. ■

## Seat belts cleaning

*A dirty belt may not work properly.*

Check all seat belts regularly and keep them clean.

### Seat belts cleaning

– Pull the dirty seat belt right out and unroll it.

– Clean the dirty seat belts with a *gentle* soap solution.

– Allow it to dry.

– Do not roll the seat belt up until it is dry.

If large stains form on the belts, it will not retract correctly into the automatic belt retractor.

**WARNING**

- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts, as this can impair the strength of the webbing. Ensure that belts do not come into contact with corrosive fluids.**
- **Check all seat belts condition at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a specialist workshop.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**

**Caution**

After cleaning, allow seat belts to dry completely before rolling them up. Otherwise, the belt retractors could become damaged. ■

# Accessories, parts replacement and modifications

## Accessories and parts

*Always consult an Authorised Service Centre before purchasing accessories and parts.*

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety.

Before purchasing accessories and parts, and before making technical changes to your car, we recommend you to consult your Authorised Service Centre.

SEAT dealerships will be happy to provide you with the latest information about the use, legal requirements and recommendations from the manufacturer regarding accessories and parts.

We recommend you to use only **SEAT Approved Accessories®** and **SEAT Approved Spare Parts®**. This way, SEAT can guarantee that the product in question is suitable, reliable and safe. SEAT Authorised Service Centres have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that parts are correctly and professionally installed.

Despite a continuous observation of the market, SEAT is not able to assess the reliability, safety and suitability of those parts **SEAT has not approved**. For this reason, SEAT cannot assume responsibility for any non-genuine parts used, even if these parts have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **equipment subsequently installed** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven (e.g. cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension) must be approved by SEAT and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol).

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted so that they do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), then they must bear the **CE** mark (European Union manufacturer conformity declaration).

**WARNING**

**Accessories, for example telephone holders or drink holders, should never be fitted on the covers of, or within the working range of the airbags. Otherwise, there is a danger of injury if the airbag is triggered in an accident.** ■

## Technical modifications

*Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications.*

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other indirect systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate your vehicle registration documents.

SEAT Authorised Service Centres cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work incorrectly performed.

For this reason, we recommend you that all work should be performed by an Authorised Service Centre using **genuine and SEAT ® approved parts and accessories**.

**WARNING**

**Incorrectly performed modifications or other kind of work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents.** ■

## Roof aerial*

The vehicle may be fitted with a foldable* and anti-theft* aerial that may be positioned parallel to the roof.

**To fold down**

Unscrew the rod, position parallel to the roof and tighten once again.

**To return to working position**

Continue in the reverse order to the previous instruction.

**Caution**

If an automatic car wash tunnel is used, before entering the tunnel, put the aerial down parallel to the roof and do not tighten to avoid damage. ■

## Mobile telephones and radios

First consult your Authorised Service Centre if you wish to use a mobile telephone or a two-way radio with a transmitting power output in excess of 10 watts. Here you will receive information concerning the technical possibilities for retrofitting this equipment.

Mobile telephones and two-way radios should be only fitted by a qualified workshop, for example an Authorised Service Centre.

**WARNING**

- **Always concentrate primarily on driving. If you are distracted while driving you could have an accident.**
- **Never attach the telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units or within the range of the airbags. There is a high danger of injury if the airbag is triggered.**

**Note**

Please observe the operating instructions of your mobile telephone / two-way radio. ■

# Checking and refilling levels

## Refuelling

*The tank flap is released manually. The tank holds approximately 55 litres. For four-wheel drive vehicles, the tank capacity is approximately 60 litres.*

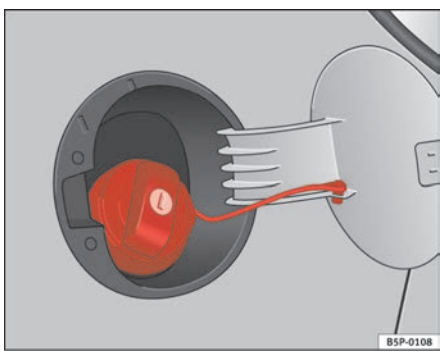


Fig. 154 Tank flap open

### Unscrewing the tank cap

– Lift the lid.

– Grip the cap and then insert the key into the lock and rotate 180° to the left.

– Unscrew the cap, turning it anti-clockwise.

### Closing the tank cap

– Screw the tank cap to the right, until the point of feeling a “click”.

– Turn the key in the lock, without unscrewing the cap, clockwise through 180°.

– Remove the key and close the flap until it clicks into place. The tank cap is secured with an anti-loss attachment

The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.

If the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly, it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is “full”. Never attempt to fill beyond this point, as this will fill the expansion chamber. Fuel may leak out if ambient conditions are warm.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Further notes on fuel can be found.

**WARNING**

- **Fuel is highly inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.**
  - **Never smoke or use any naked flame when filling the fuel tank of the vehicle, or a spare fuel canister, with fuel. This is an explosion hazard.**
  - **Follow legal requirements for the use of spare fuel canisters.**
  - **For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and leak.**
- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following points:**

**WARNING (continued)**

– **Never fill the spare fuel canister inside the vehicle or on it. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel fumes to ignite. This may be fatally explosive. Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.**

– **Insert the fuel nozzle into the mouth of the canister as far as possible.**

– **If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filling nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.**

– **Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapours are explosive. Danger of death.**

### Caution

- Fuel spills should be removed from the paintwork immediately.
- Never run the tank completely dry. An irregular fuel supply could cause misfiring. As a result, unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and cause damage.

### For the sake of the environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm. ■

# Petrol

## Petrol types

*The correct petrol types are listed on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap.*

Only **unleaded petrol, corresponding to the standard DIN EN 228**, may be used for vehicles with catalytic converters (EN = “European Standard”).

Fuel types are differentiated by the **octane rating**, e.g: 91, 95, 98 RON (RON = “Regulation Octane Number, unit for determining the knock resistance of petrol”). You may use petrol with a higher octane number than the one recommended for your engine. However, this has no advantage in terms of fuel consumption and engine power.

The appropriate type of fuel for your vehicle is specified in your engine technical table. “Technical Data” Section

### Caution

- Petrol that follows EN 228 may be mixed with small quantities of ethanol. However, the so-called “bioethanol fuels” available at commercial establishments with reference E50 or E85, which contain a high percentage of ethanol, may **not** be used, as they will damage the fuel system.
- Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

### For the sake of the environment

Just one full tank of leaded fuel would seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter. ■

## Petrol additives

*Petrol additives improve the quality of the petrol.*

The quality of the petrol influences running behaviour, performance and service life of the engine. For this reason, you should use good quality petrol containing additives. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good quality petrol with additives is not available or engine problems occur, the required additives must be added during refuelling. ■

# Diesel

## Diesel*

**Diesel fuel** must correspond to DIN EN 590 (EN = "European standard"). It must have a cetane number (CN) of at least 51. The cetane number indicates the ignition quality of the diesel fuel.

Notes on filling with fuel ⇒ page 212. ■

## Biodiesel*

The biodiesel fuel must comply with the DIN EN 14.214 (FAME) Standard.

- Biodiesel is a methylester obtained from rapeseed oil.
- DIN is the German abbreviation for "**D**eutsches **I**nstitut für **N**ormung e.V.", the German standards institute.
- EN means **E**uropean **N**orm.
- FAME is the English abbreviation for "**F**atty **A**cid **M**ethyl **E**ster".

Your Authorised Service Centre can also be consulted to know if the vehicle has been prepared for biodiesel use.

**Things to note about RME fuel (biodiesel)**

- The performance of a vehicle using biodiesel maybe somewhat reduced.
- Fuel consumption of a vehicle using biodiesel may be slightly higher.
- RME fuel is resistant to the cold down to approx. -10°C.
- At temperatures below -10°C, we recommend using winter diesel fuel.
- Your vehicle is designed to be refuelled with up to a maximum of 7% blended biodiesel in accordance with standard DIN 51628.

**Caution**

- RME fuel can damage the fuel system in vehicles which are not suitably adjusted.
- If you decide to use biodiesel in your vehicle, please use only RME fuel which is DIN E 14,214 compliant.
- If you use biodiesel that does not meet the required standard, the fuel filter could become clogged.

**Note**

- In case of low exterior temperatures and a fuel biodiesel percentage of higher than 50%, an increase in gas emission may occur during operation of the independent heating.
- The fuel filter may become clogged when fuel is changed to biodiesel. For this reason, we recommend you that, when having run 300 or 400 km after a fuel change, the fuel filter change must also be done. Also note the instructions in the Inspection and Maintenance plan.
- If the vehicle is to remain parked for more than about two weeks, we recommend filling the fuel tank with biodiesel and driving about 50 km in order to avoid damage to the injection system. ■

## Winter driving

*Diesel can thicken in winter.*

**Winter-grade diesel**

When using “summer-grade diesel fuel”, difficulties may be experienced at sub-zero temperatures because the fuel thickens due to wax separation. Therefore, “winter-grade diesel fuel” is available in some countries during the cold months. It can be used at temperatures as low as -22°C.

In countries with different climatic conditions the diesel fuel generally sold has different temperature characteristics. Check with an Authorised Service Centre or filling stations in the country concerned regarding the type of diesel fuels available.

**Filter pre-heater**

Your vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter pre-heater, making it well equipped for operation in winter. This ensures that the fuel system remains operational to approx. -24°C, provided you use winter-grade diesel which is safe to -15°C.

However, if the fuel has waxed to such an extent that the engine will not start at temperatures of under -24°C, simply place the vehicle in a warm place for a while.

**Caution**

Do not mix fuel additives (“thinners”, or similar additives) with diesel fuel. ■

# Working in the engine compartment

## Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment

*Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.*

Before starting any work on the engine or in the engine compartment:

1. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Apply the handbrake.
3. Move the gear stick to neutral or the selector lever to position **P**.
4. Wait for the engine to cool down.
5. Keep children away from the vehicle.
6. Raise the bonnet ⇒ page 217.

You should not do any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the jobs and have the correct tools! Have the work carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain.

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and batteries, are being constantly developed. SEAT provides a constant flow of information to the Authorised Service Centres concerning modifications. For this reason, we recommend you to have service fluids and consumables replaced by an Authorised Service Centre. Please observe the relevant instructions ⇒ page 210. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area. ⇒ ⚠. ▶

**WARNING**

**All work on the engine or in the engine compartment, e.g. checking and refilling fluids, involves the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire.**

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining burns. Wait until no more steam or coolant is emitted, then allow the engine to cool before carefully opening the bonnet.**
- **Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **Apply the handbrake and move the gear stick to neutral or selector lever to position P.**
- **Keep children away from the vehicle.**
- **Never touch hot engine parts. There is a risk of burns.**
- **Never spill liquids on a hot engine or on a hot exhaust gas system. This is a fire hazard.**
- **Avoid causing short-circuits in the electrical system, particularly at the points where the jump leads are attached** ⇒ **page 265****. The battery could explode.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and could start automatically, even when the engine has been switched off and the key removed from the ignition!**
- **Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. If the coolant is hot, the cooling system will be pressurised!**
- **Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.**
- **Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle, there is a risk of accident!. A hydraulic jack is insufficient for securing the vehicle and there is a risk of injury.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also observe the following points:**
  - **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
  - **Ensure that jewellery, loose clothing and long hair do not get trapped in rotating engine parts. Danger of death. Before starting any work remove jewellery, tie back and cover hair, and wear tight-fitting clothes.**
  - **Always think carefully about pressing the accelerator if a gear is engaged in either an automatic or manual gearbox. The vehicle could move, even if the handbrake is applied. Danger of death.**
- **If work has to be carried out on the fuel system or on electrical components, you must observe the following safety notes in addition to the above warnings:**
  - **Always disconnect the battery. The vehicle must be unlocked when this is done, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.**
  - **Do not smoke.**
  - **Never work near naked flames.**
  - **Always have a fire extinguisher on hand.**

**Caution**

When changing or topping up service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Failure to observe this point will result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!

### For the sake of the environment

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. For this reason you should make regular checks on the ground underneath your vehicle. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in a qualified workshop. ■

## Opening the bonnet

*The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.*

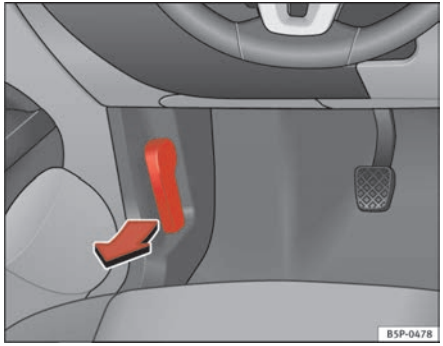


Fig. 155 Detail of foot-well area on driver's side: lever for unlocking the bonnet.

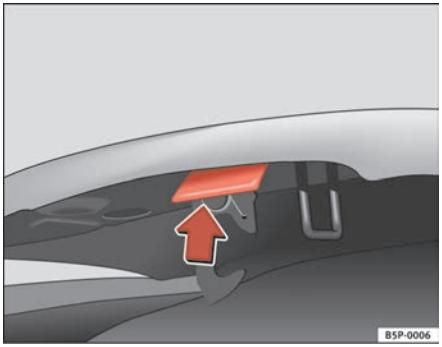


Fig. 156 Arrester hook for bonnet.

Before opening the bonnet ensure that the windscreen wipers are in rest position.

– To release the bonnet, pull the lever under the dashboard ⇒ fig. 155 in the direction indicated (arrow). The bonnet will be released by a spring action ⇒ ⚠.

– Lift the bonnet using the release lever (arrow) and open the bonnet.

– Release the bonnet stay and secure it in fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Hot coolant can scald!**

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Wait until no more steam, smoke or coolant is emitted from the bonnet, then carefully open the bonnet.**
- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 215.** ■

## Closing the bonnet

– Raise the bonnet slightly.

– Release the bonnet stay and replace it in its support.

– At a height of about 30 cm let it fall so it is locked.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it once more and let it fall as before.

**WARNING**

**If the bonnet is not closed properly, it could open while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. Risk of accident.**

- **After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.**
- **If you notice that the bonnet latch is not secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly. Risk of accident.** ■

# Engine oil

## Engine oil specifications

*The engine oil used must conform with exact specifications.*

**Specifications**

The engine comes with a special, high quality, multi grade oil that can be used in all seasons of the year except for those regions affected by extreme cold.

As the use of high quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or replacement is necessary use only those oils that conform to the requirements of the VW standards.

If it is not possible to find oil conforming to the VW standards then oil conforming to the ACEA or API standards with an appropriate viscosity at atmospheric temperature should be used instead. The use of this type of oil may have some repercussions on the performance of the engine for example, long starting time, increased consumption and a higher emission level.

If a top up is required then different oils may be mixed as long as they all conform to the VW standards.

The specifications (VW standards) set out in the following page should appear on the container of the service oil; the container will display together the different standards for petrol and diesel engines, the oil can be used for both types of engines. ■

## Oil properties

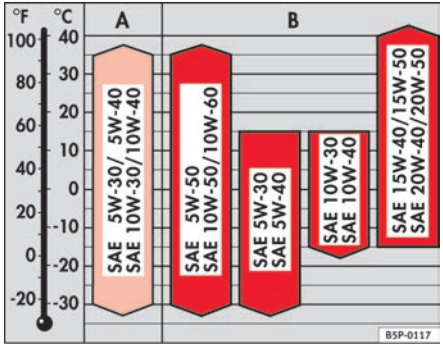


Fig. 157 Types of oil according to temperature

### Viscosity

The viscosity class of the oil is selected according to the diagram.

When the ambient temperature falls outside the limits of the scale for a short period, an oil change is not required.

| Engine type | Specification |
|---|---|
| Petrol | VW 501 01/ VW 502 00/ VW 504 00 |
| Diesel | VW 505 01/ VW 507 00/ VW 506 01 |
| Diesel Engines with Particulate filter (DPF)[a)] | VW 507 00 |

a) Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

### Mono-grade oil

Single grade oils are generally not suitable for all year round use, due to ranges of viscosity[20)].

These oils are only useful in a climate that is constantly very cold or very warm.

### Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

**Note**

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed. ■

## Checking the engine oil level

*The engine oil dipstick indicates the level of the oil.*

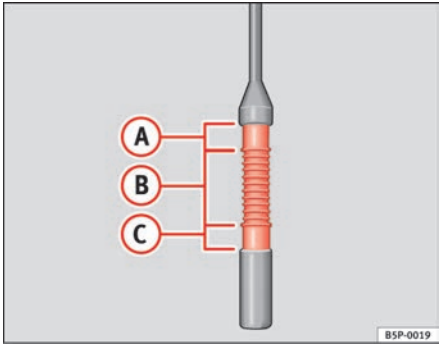


Fig. 158 Engine oil dipstick.

20) Viscosity: oil density

### Checking oil level

– Park the vehicle in a horizontal position.

– Briefly run the engine at idle speed until the service temperature is reached then stop.

– Wait two minutes.

– Pull out the dipstick. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.

– Then pull it out once more and check the oil level ⇒ page 219, fig. 158. Top up with engine oil if necessary.

**Oil level in area (A)**

– Do not add oil.

**Oil level in area (B)**

– Oil **can** be topped up. The indicated oil level should be **after** zone (A)

**Oil level in area (C)**

– Oil **must** be topped up. The indicated oil level should be **after** in zone (A).

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 l/1,000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

**WARNING**

**Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.**

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 215.**

**Caution**

If the oil level is above the area (A) do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ■

## Topping up engine oil

*Top up gradually with small quantities of oil.*

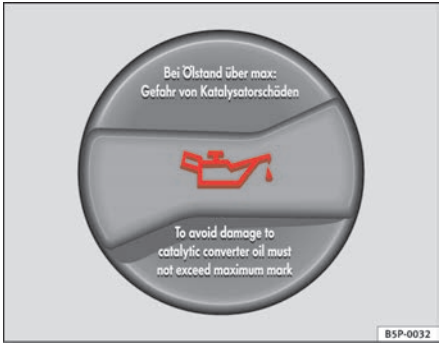


**Fig. 159 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap**

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 215.

– Unscrew cap from oil filler opening ⇒ fig. 159.

– Top-up oil in small amounts, using the correct oil.

– To avoid over-filling with engine oil, you should top-up using small quantities, wait a while and check the oil level before adding any more oil.

– As soon as the oil level is in area (B), carefully close the cap.

The position of the oil filler opening is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 275.

Engine oil specification ⇒ page 218.

**WARNING**

**Oil is highly inflammable! Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up.**

**Caution**

If the oil level is above the area (A) do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact a qualified workshop.

**For the sake of the environment**

The oil level must never be above area (A). Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system. ■

## Changing engine oil

*The engine oil must be changed at the intervals given in the service schedule.*

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed by an Authorised Service Centre.

The oil change intervals are shown in the Maintenance Programme.

**WARNING**

**Only change the oil yourself if you have the specialist knowledge required!**

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 215, "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment".**
- **Wait for the engine to cool down. Hot oil may cause burn injuries.**
- **Wear eye protection to avoid injuries caused by splashes of oil.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arm horizontal to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous! Used oil must be stored in a safe place out of the reach of children until it is disposed of.**

**Caution**

No additives should be used with engine oil. This could result in engine damage. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

**For the sake of the environment**

- Because of the disposal problems, the necessary special tools and specialist knowledge required, we recommend that you have the engine oil and filter changed by an Authorised Service Centre. ▶

- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It has to be large enough to hold all the engine oil ■

# Coolant

## Coolant specifications

*Coolant is a mixture of water and at least 40% coolant additive.*

The cooling system must be filled with a mixture of water and at least 40 % of our coolant additive G12+ or an additive with the specification TT-VW 774 F (it is dyed purple). This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

The concentration of coolant must *always* be at least 40% - even if frost protection is not required.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of the antifreeze additive G12+ can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additives should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection. It would also reduce the cooling effect. A mixture with 60% coolant additive will give frost protection to approx. -40°C.

**WARNING**

- **The coolant additive is toxic. There is a toxic risk. Always keep the coolant additive in the original container which should be stored out of the reach of children. The same applies to coolant which you have drained off.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The coolant additive G12+ must be added in sufficient quantities to provide anti-freeze protection at the coldest ambient temperatures that can be expected. At extremely cold ambient temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to breakdown. As the heater would also not work in this situation, there is a risk of suffering exposure!**

**Caution**

- Other additives may give considerably inferior corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion in the cooling system can lead to a loss of coolant, causing serious damage to the engine.
- The coolant additive G12+ (purple) can be mixed with the additive G12 (red) or G11. Never mix G12 (red colour) with G11. ■

## Checking the coolant level and topping up

*The correct coolant level is important for fault-free functioning of the engine cooling system.*

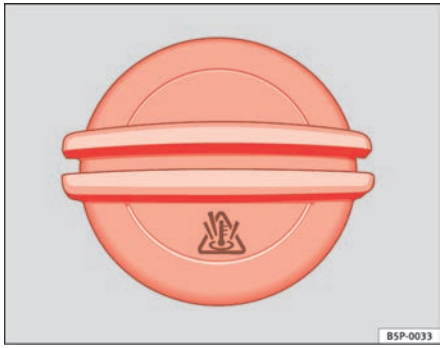


**Fig. 160 In the engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank cap**

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 215.

### Opening the coolant expansion tank

– Switch off the engine and allow it to cool.

– To prevent scalding, cover the cap on the expansion tank with a thick cloth and carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ ⚠.

### Checking coolant level

– Look into the open coolant expansion tank and read off the coolant level.

– If the level is underneath the "MIN" mark, top up with coolant.

### Topping up coolant

– Only use **new** coolant.

– Do not fill above the "MAX" mark.

### Closing the coolant expansion tank

– Screw the cap on again *tightly*.

The position of the coolant expansion reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 275.

Make sure that the coolant meets the required specifications ⇒ page 222. Do not use a different type of additive if coolant additive G12+ is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive ⇒ page 222.

Always top up with *new* coolant.

Do not fill above the "MAX" mark. Otherwise the excess coolant will be forced out of the cooling system when the engine is hot.

The coolant additive G12+ (dyed purple) may be mixed with G12 (dyed red) and also with G 11.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.**

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 215.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **When the engine is warm or hot, the cooling system is pressurised! Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. This is a burn injury risk.**

**Caution**

- When mixed with other additives the colour of G12 will change to brown. If this occurs you should have the coolant changed immediately. Failure to do so will result in engine damage!
- If a lot of coolant has been lost, wait for the engine to *cool down* before putting in cold coolant. This avoids damaging the engine. Large coolant losses are an indication of leaks in the cooling system. See a specialised workshop immediately and have the cooling system checked. Otherwise, there is a risk of engine damage. ■

# Washer fluid and windscreen wiper blades

## Topping up washer fluid

*The water for cleaning the windscreen should always be mixed with washer fluid.*

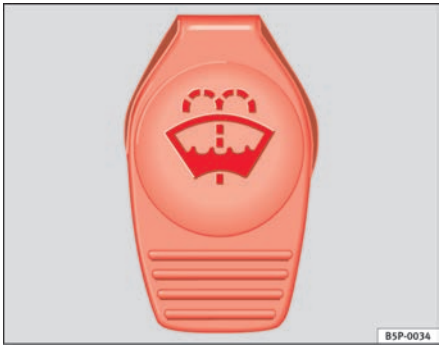


**Fig. 161 In the engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer fluid reservoir.**

The **windscreen washer** and the **headlight washing system** are supplied with fluid from the windscreen washer fluid container in the engine compartment.

The reservoir is located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment.

Plain water is not enough to clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend that you always add a product to the windscreen washer fluid. Approved windscreen cleaning products exist on the market with high detergent and anti-freeze properties, these may be added all-year-round. Please follow the dilution instructions on the packaging. ▶

**WARNING**

**Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.**

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 215.**

**Caution**

- Never put radiator anti-freeze or other additives into the windscreen washer fluid.
- Always use approved windscreen cleansing products diluted as per instructions. If you use other washer fluids or soap solutions, the tiny holes in the fan-shaped nozzles could become blocked. ■

## Changing windscreen wiper blades

*If the windscreen wiper blades are in perfect condition, you will benefit from an improved visibility. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.*

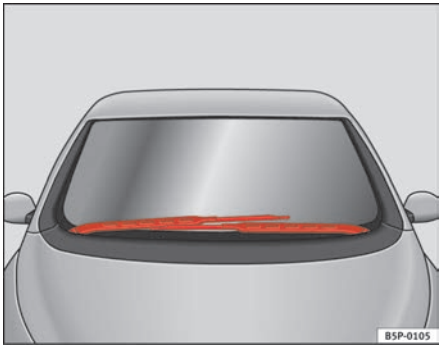


Fig. 162 Windscreen wipers in the service position

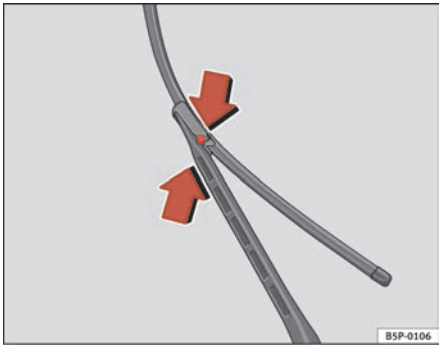


Fig. 163 Changing the front wiper blades

To change the blades it is necessary to change the rest position of the wipers to the service position.

### Service position (For changing wiper blades)

– Ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen.

– Turn ignition on and off and then (before approx. 8 seconds have elapsed), move the windscreen wiper lever to the intermittent wipe position. The windscreen wipers will move to the service position.

### Changing the windscreen wiper blades

– Lift the wiper arm away from the windscreen.

– Push the side buttons, free the blade and pull in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 163.

### Fitting the wiper blade

– Insert a blade of identical length and design into the wiper arm.

– Slide the blade until it clicks into position.

– Push the wiper arms back against the windscreen.

The windscreen wiper arms return to their original position when the ignition is turned on and the windscreen wiper lever is operated, or when driving faster than 6 km/h.

If the **windscreen wipers smear**, they should be replaced if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are soiled.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windscreen wiper arms might be incorrect. They should be checked by a qualified workshop and corrected if necessary.

**WARNING**

**Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!**

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

**Caution**

- Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the windscreen.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. This could damage the windscreen wiper blades.
- Never move the windscreen wiper or windscreen wiper arm manually. This could cause damage.
- Do not pull the windscreen wipers forward unless they are in the service position. Otherwise the bonnet could be damaged.

**Note**

- The wiper arms can be moved to the service position only when the bonnet is properly closed. ■

## Changing the rear wiper blade

*A good rear wiper blade is essential for clear rear vision. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.*

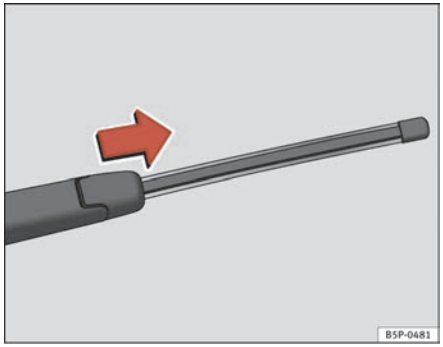


**Fig. 164 Remove rear window wiper blade**

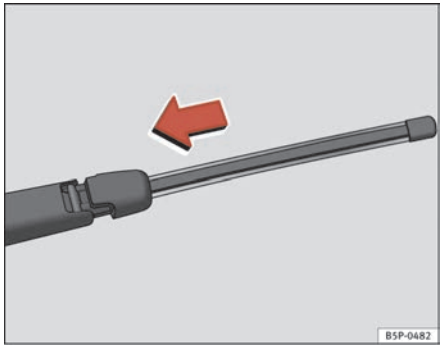


**Fig. 165 Mount rear window wiper blade**

### Removing the wiper blade

– Lift the wiper arm away from the glass ⇒ page 227, fig. 164.

– Slide the blade adapter in the direction of the arrow and remove the blade ⇒ page 227, fig. 164.

### Fitting the wiper blade

– With one hand, hold the top end of the wiper arm.

– Place the blade as shown in the ⇒ page 227, fig. 165 and slide the adapter along until it fits into place.

Check the condition of the wiper blade regularly. Change as required.

If the **windscreen wiper scrapes**, it should be replaced if damaged, or cleaned if soiled.

If this is not sufficient, refer to a qualified workshop.

**WARNING**

**Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!**

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

**Caution**

- A damaged or dirty window wiper could scratch the rear window.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the window.
- Never move the windscreen wiper by hand. This could cause damage. ■

# Brake fluid

## Checking the brake fluid level

*The brake fluid is checked at the intervals given in the service schedule.*

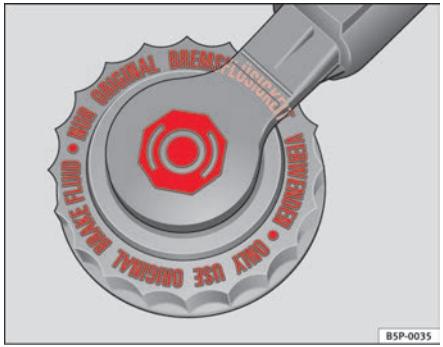


**Fig. 166 In the engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir cover**

– Read off the fluid level at the transparent brake fluid reservoir. It should always be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks.

The position of the brake fluid reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 275. The brake fluid reservoir has a black and yellow cap.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads are automatically adjusted as they wear.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the “MIN” mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. A display on the instrument panel will warn you if the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 75.

**WARNING**

**Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 215.** ■

## Changing the brake fluid

*The Maintenance Program indicates the brake fluid change intervals.*

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by an Authorised Service Centre.

Before opening the bonnet, please read and follow the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment” on page 215 in “Working in the engine compartment”.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. In the course of time, it will absorb water from the ambient air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. This also considerably reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid. Heavy use of the brakes may then cause a vapour lock which could impair the braking effect.

It is important that you use only brake fluid compliant with the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4. We recommend the use of Genuine SEAT brake fluid.

**WARNING**

**Brake fluid is poisonous. Old brake fluid impairs the braking effect.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 215.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. There is a toxic risk.**
- **Complete the brake fluid change according to the Maintenance Program. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle. This may cause an accident.**

### Caution

Brake fluid could damage the paintwork. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paintwork immediately.

### For the sake of the environment

Brake fluid must be drained and disposed of in the proper manner observing environmental regulations. ■

# Battery

## Warnings on handling the battery

| | |
|---|---|
| | Wear eye protection |
| | Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Wear protective gloves and eye protection! |
| | Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited! |
| | A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge. |
| | Keep children away from acid and batteries! |

**WARNING**

**Always be aware of the danger of injury and chemical burns as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system:**

- **Wear eye protection. Protect your eyes, skin and clothing from acid and particles containing lead.**
- **Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the batteries. This could spill acid through the vents. Rinse battery acid from eyes immediately for several minutes with clear water. Then seek medical care immediately. Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with a soapy solution, and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.**
- **Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited. When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid causing sparks and electrostatic**

**WARNING (continued)**

**charge. Never short the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause injury.**

- **A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge. The batteries should be charged in a well-ventilated room only.**
- **Keep children away from acid and batteries.**
- **Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all consumers. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. When a light bulb is changed, you need only switch off the light.**
- **Deactivate the anti-theft alarm by unlocking the vehicle before you disconnect the battery! The alarm will otherwise be triggered.**
- **When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, disconnect first the negative cable and then the positive cable.**
- **Switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the battery. Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable. Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause an electrical fire.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery, or one which has thawed. This could result in explosions and chemical burns. Always replace a battery which has frozen. A flat battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°**
- **Ensure that the vent hose is always connected to the battery.**
- **Never use a defective battery. This may be fatally explosive. Replace a damaged battery immediately.**

**Caution**

- Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight over a long period of time, as the intense ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the battery from frost. If it “freezes” it will be damaged. ■

## Checking the electrolyte level

*The electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries.*

– Open the bonnet and open the battery cover at the front ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment” on page 215 ⇒ ⚠ in “Warnings on handling the battery” on page 229.

– Check the colour display in the "magic eye" on the top of the battery.

– If there are air bubbles in the window, tap the window gently until they disperse.

The position of the battery is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 275.

The round window (“magic eye”) on the top of the battery changes colour, depending on the charge level and electrolyte level of the battery.

If the colour in the window is **colourless or bright yellow**, the electrolyte level of the battery is too low. Have the battery checked by a qualified workshop.

The colours green and black are used by the workshops for diagnostic purposes. ■

## Charging and changing the vehicle battery

*The battery is maintenance-free and is checked during the inspection service. All work on the vehicle battery requires specialist knowledge.*

If you often drive short distances or if the vehicle is not driven for long periods, the battery should be checked by a qualified workshop between the scheduled services.

If the battery has discharged and you have problems starting the vehicle, the battery might be damaged. If this happens, we recommend you have the vehicle battery checked by an Authorised Service Centre where it will be recharged or replaced.

### Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop only, as batteries using special technology have been installed and they must be charged in a controlled environment.

### Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features.

Genuine SEAT batteries fulfil the maintenance, performance and safety specifications of your vehicle.

**WARNING**

- **We recommend you use only maintenance-free or cycle free leak-proof batteries which comply with the standards T 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. This standard applies as of 2001.**
- **Before starting any work on the batteries, you must read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in “Warnings on handling the battery” on page 229.**

### For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of appropriately and must not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. ■

# Wheels and tyres

## Wheels

### General notes

#### Avoiding damage

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign objects embedded in the treads.

#### Storing tyres

- Mark tyres when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to install them correctly when you replace them.
- When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location.
- Store tyres in a vertical position if they are not fitted on wheel rims.

#### New tyres

New tyres have to be run in ⇒ page 192.

The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

#### Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. The tyres should be checked immediately by an Authorised Service Centre.

#### Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

**WARNING**

- **New tyres do not have maximum grip in the first 500 km. Drive particularly carefully to avoid risk of accident.**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check the tyres for damage.** ■

### Checking tyre pressure

*The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap.*

1. Read the required tyre inflation pressure from the sticker. The values refer to Summer tyres. For Winter tyres, you must add 0.2 bar to the values given on the sticker. ▶

2. The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.

3. Adjust the tyre pressure to the load you are carrying.

**Tyre pressure**

The correct tyre pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the inside of the tank flap. The tyre pressure values given are for cold tyres. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Checking tyre pressure value is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents - particularly at high speeds.**
- **A tyre can easily burst if the pressure is too low, causing an accident!**
- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. In this way it becomes too hot, and this can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well. Risk of accident!**

**For the sake of the environment**

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption. ■

## Tyre pressure monitoring*

*The tyre pressure monitoring system constantly checks the pressure of the tyres.*

The system uses the speed sensors of the ABS wheels. It operates by analysing the speed and frequency spectrum of each wheel.

For optimum performance, use genuine SEAT tyres. In addition, check and adjust tyre pressures regularly.

Whenever the tyre pressures are changed or one or more tyres are changed, the system should be Reset by pressing the SET switch on the central console.

The system warns the driver in the event of a loss of pressure by means of symbols and messages in the instrument cluster display. The system uses ESP ⇒ page 187.

Note that tyre pressure also depends on tyre temperature. Tyre pressure increases about 0.1 bar for each 10°C in tyre temperature increase. The tyre heats up while the vehicle is being driven and the tyre pressure will rise accordingly. For this reason, you should only adjust the tyre pressures when they are cold (i.e. approximately at ambient temperature).

To ensure that the tyre pressure monitoring system works reliably, you should check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures at regular intervals and store the correct pressures (reference values) in the system.

A tyre pressure information label is attached to the inside of the fuel tank flap.

**WARNING**

- **Never adjust tyre pressure when the tyres are hot. This may damage or even burst the tyres. Risk of accident!**
- **An insufficiently inflated tyre flexes a lot more at high speeds and causes significant heating of the tyre. Under these conditions, the tyre bead may be released or the tyre may burst. Risk of accident!**

### For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres lead to increased fuel consumption and tyre wear. ■

## Significant tyre pressure loss

The tyre symbol (⚠) is displayed and indicates that the tyre pressure for a least one tyre is insufficient.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch the engine off.
- Check the tyre(s).
- Change the wheel if necessary ⇒ page 242.

## Tyre service life

*The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style and fitting.*

**Fig. 167 Tyre tread wear indicators**

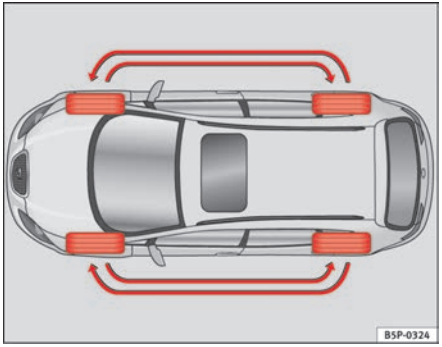


**Fig. 168 Diagram for changing wheels**

### Wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high "tread wear indicators" ⇒ page 234, fig. 167, running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be six to eight of them evenly spaced around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. The minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Worn tyres must be replaced. Different figures may apply in export countries ⇒ ⚠.

### Tyre pressure

Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and could cause tyre blow-out. For this reason, the tyre pressure should be checked at least once per month ⇒ page 232.

### Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

### Changing wheels around

If the front tyres are worn considerably more than the rear ones it is advisable to change them around as shown ⇒ page 234, fig. 168. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

### Wheel balance

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration.

Unbalanced wheels should be rebalanced, as they otherwise cause excessive wear on steering, suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted.

### Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the wheel alignment checked by an Authorised Service Centre.

**⚠ WARNING**

**There is a serious danger of accidents if a tyre bursts during driving!**

- **The tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Failure to do so could result in an accident. Worn tyres do not grip well at high speeds on wet roads. There is also a greater risk of "aquaplaning"**
- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. This causes it to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Risk of accident. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the running gear checked by an Authorised Service Centre.**
- **Keep chemicals such as oil, fuel and brake fluid away from tyres.**
- **Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately!**

**For the sake of the environment**

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption. ■

## Anti-puncture tyres

*Anti-puncture tyres allow you to continue driving even with a punctured tyre, in the majority of cases.*

Vehicles equipped with anti-puncture[21)] tyres from the factory indicate the loss of tyre pressure on the instrument panel. ▶

[21)] Depending upon version and country.

### Driving with anti-puncture tyres (emergency gear)

- Leave the ESP/TCS (electronic stabilisation programme) switched on, or switch on ⇒ page 187.
- Continue driving carefully and slowly (80 km/h maximum).
- Avoid sudden manoeuvres and sharp turns.
- Avoid driving over obstacles (for example kerbs) or potholes.
- Look out for the ESP/TCS intervening often, smoke coming from the tyres or the smell of rubber, the vehicle vibrating or a clattering noise. If any of these occur, stop the vehicle.

The anti-puncture tyres have a tag on the side of the tyre, with the description: “DSST”, “Eufonia”, “RFT”, “ROF”, “RSC”, “SSR” or “ZP”.

The sides of this type of tyre are reinforced. When the tyres lose air they are supported on the sides (emergency driving).

The loss of pressure in the tyre is shown on the instrument panel. You can then drive a maximum of 80 km and if the circumstances are favourable (for example, low load), even more.

The damaged tyre should be changed as soon as possible. The rim should be checked in a specialist workshop to detect possible damage and replace it if necessary. We recommend you contact Technical Service. If more than one tyre is being used under emergency conditions, this reduces the distance which can be travelled.

#### Starting driving in emergency conditions

When the loss in tyre pressure is displayed on the instrument panel, this implies that at least one tyre is being driven in emergency conditions ⇒ ⚠.

#### End of emergency operation

Do not drive on if:

- smoke is coming from one of the tyres,
- there is a smell of rubber,
- the vehicle vibrates,
- there is a rattling noise.

#### When is it no longer possible to continue driving even using anti-puncture tyres?

- If one of the tyres has been severely damaged in an accident, etc. If a tyre has been badly damaged there is a risk that parts of the tread can be thrown off and cause damage to the fuel lines, brake pipes or fuel filler.
- It is also advisable to stop driving if severe vibrations occur, or if the wheel starts overheating and gives off smoke.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When driving in emergency conditions, the driving quality of the vehicle is considerably impaired.**

- **The maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h is subject to road and weather conditions. Please observe legal requirements when doing so.**
- **Avoid sharp turns and rapid manoeuvres, and brake earlier than usual.**
- **Avoid driving over obstacles (for example kerbs) or potholes.**
- **If one or more tyres is being driven in emergency conditions, the driving quality of the vehicle is impaired and there is a risk of accident.**

**Note**

- The anti-puncture tyres do not “deflate” on losing pressure because they are supported on the reinforced sides. Therefore defects in the tyre can not be detected with a visual inspection.
- Snow chains must not be used on front tyres used in emergency conditions. ■

## New tyres and wheels

*New tyres and wheels have to be run-in.*

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by SEAT are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling ⇒ ⚠.

Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together). A knowledge of tyre designations makes it easier to choose the correct tyres. Radial tyres have the tyre designations marked on the sidewall, for example:

**195/65 R15 91T**

This contains the following information:

195 Tyre width in mm
65 Height/width ratio in %
R Tyre construction: **R**adial
15 Rim diameter in inches
91 Load rating code
T Speed rating

The tyres could also have the following information:

- A direction of rotation symbol
- "Reinforced" denotes heavy-duty tyres.

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel).

"DOT... 1103..." means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 11th week of 2003.

We recommend that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by an Authorised Service Centre. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres.

Any Authorised Service Centre has full information on the technical requirements when installing or changing tyres, wheels or wheel trims.

On vehicles with **four-wheel drive**, all four tyres must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as otherwise the driveline can be damaged by continuous differences in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel with the same tyre dimensions as the normal road wheels. You may also use the factory-supplied compact temporary spare wheel.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **We recommend that you use only wheels and tyres which have been approved by SEAT for your model. Failure to do so could impair vehicle handling. Risk of accident.**
- **Avoid running the vehicle on tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**
- **Never use old tyres or those with an unknown "history of use".**
- **If wheel trims are retrofitted, you must ensure that the flow of air to the brakes is not restricted. This could cause them to overheat.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.**

### For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of according to the laws in the country concerned.

### Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same model. The use of ▶

wheels or tyres which have not been approved by SEAT for use with your model may invalidate the vehicle's type approval for use on public roads.

- If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tyres - you should only use the spare tyre for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible. ■

## Wheel bolts

*Wheel bolts must be tightened to the correct torque.*

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different wheel rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different car - even if it is the same model ⇒ page 210.

After the wheels have been changed, the tightening torque of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ⇒ ⚠. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.

**WARNING**

**If the wheel bolts are not tightened correctly, the wheel could become loose while driving. Risk of accident.**

- **The wheel bolts must be clean and turn easily. Never apply grease or oil to them.**
- **Use only wheel bolts which belong to the wheel.**
- **If the torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.**

**Caution**

The prescribed torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

## Winter tyres

*Winter tyres will improve the vehicles handling on snow and ice.*

In winter conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the vehicles handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tyres must be inflated to a **pressure** 0.2 bar higher than the pressures specified for summer tyres (see sticker on tank flap).

Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.

Information on permitted **winter tyre sizes** can be found in the vehicle's registration documents. Use only radial winter tyres. All tyre sizes listed in the vehicle documentation also apply to winter tyres.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The speed rating code ⇒ page 237, “New tyres and wheels” determines the following **speed limits** for winter tyres: ⇒ ⚠

Q max. 160 km/h
S max. 180 km/h
T max. 190 km/h
H max. 210 km/h

In some countries, vehicles which can exceed the speed rating of the fitted tyre must have an appropriate sticker in the driver's field of view. These ▶

stickers are available from your Authorised Service Centre. The legal requirements of each country must be followed.

Do not have winter tyres fitted for unnecessarily long periods. Vehicles with summer tyres handle better when the roads are free of snow and ice.

If you have a flat tyre, please refer to the notes on the spare wheel ⇒ page 237, “New tyres and wheels”.

**WARNING**

**The maximum speed for the winter tyres must not be exceeded. Otherwise, this could lead to tyre damage and thus, an accident risk.**

### For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres in good time. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ■

## Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the front wheels, and only for 205/55R16 tyres. These tyres may only be fitted with fine-pitch link chains which do not protrude more than 15 mm ⇒ page 237. For 225/50R17 tyres, the use of snow chains is not permitted.

Remove wheel hub covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains. For safety reasons cover caps, available in any Authorised Service Centre, must then be fitted over the wheel bolts.

**Four-wheel drive**: where snow chains are compulsory on certain roads, this normally also applies to cars with four-wheel drive. Snow chains may only be fitted to the **front** wheels (also on vehicles with four-wheel drive).

**WARNING**

**Snow chains should be correctly tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. This will prevent the chains coming into contact with the wheel housing.**

### Caution

You must remove the snow chains to drive on roads which are free of snow. Otherwise they will impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

### Note

- In some countries, the speed limit for using snow chains is 50 km/h. The legal requirements of the country should be followed.
- We recommend that you ask your Approved Service Centre for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size. ■

# If and when

## Tools, tyre repair kit and spare wheel

### Vehicle Tools

*The vehicle onboard tools are located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.*

– Lift the cover of the luggage compartment, by pulling it up with a finger in the fitting.

– Take the onboard tools out of the vehicle.

The tool kit includes:

- Jack*
- Hook for removing wheel covers* or hub caps*
- Box spanner for wheel bolts*
- Reversible screwdriver with handle (including hexagonal interior) for the wheel bolts. The screwdriver is a combination tool.
- Towing eye
- Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts*

Some of the items listed are only provided in certain models / model years, or are optional extras.

**WARNING**

- **Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts as with this it is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque. Risk of accident.**

**WARNING (continued)**

- **The jack* supplied by the factory is only designed for changing wheels on this model. On no account attempt to use it for lifting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury.**
- **Use the jack* only on firm, level ground.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack. Risk of accident.**
- **If work is to be carried out underneath the vehicle, this must be secured by suitable stands. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.** ■

## Compact temporary spare wheel*

*The compact spare wheel (emergency wheel for vehicles without the anti-puncture kit) should only be used when strictly necessary.*

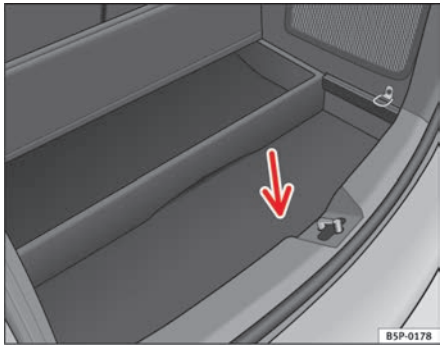


Fig. 169 Luggage compartment. Access to the spare wheel

The temporary spare wheel is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is attached by a thumbnut.

**How to use the compact temporary spare wheel**

Should you ever have a punctured tyre, the compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use until you can reach a workshop. The standard-size road wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. This spare wheel has been specially designed for your vehicle, thus, it cannot be changed with the spare wheel from another vehicle.

No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.

**Snow chains**

For technical reasons, snow chains must **not** be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

If you should have a puncture on one of the *front wheels* when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

**WARNING**

- **The tyre pressures must be checked and corrected as soon as possible. The emergency tyre pressure for dimensions 125/70R16 125/70R18 135/90R16 is 4.2 bar; for all other tyre dimensions please refer to the label on the fuel cap. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Higher speeds can cause an accident.**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering. Risk of accident.**
- **Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time, risk of accident.**
- **No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.** ■

## Tyre repair kit

*The tyre repair kit (for vehicles not including a spare wheel) is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.*

Your vehicle is equipped with the Tyre Mobility System “Tyre repair kit”.

The tyre repair kit consists of a container with sealing compound to repair the puncture and a **compressor** to generate the required tyre pressure. The kit will ▶

reliably seal punctures up to a size of about 4 mm caused by the penetration of a foreign body into the tyre.

**Note**

- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound. ■

# Wheel change

## Preparation work

*What you must do before changing a wheel.*

– If you have a flat tyre or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible. Choose a location that is as level as possible.

– All passengers should leave the vehicle. They should wait in a safe area (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

– Switch off the engine. Switch on the hazard warning lights.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Engage the **first gear**, or put the selector lever to position **P** for those vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

– If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.

– Take the **vehicle tools** and the **spare wheel** out of the luggage compartment.

**WARNING**

**Put the hazard warning lights on and place the warning triangle in position. This is for your own safety and also warns other road users.**

**Caution**

If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

**Note**

Please observe legal requirements when doing so. ■

## Changing a wheel

Change the wheel as described below

– Pull off the **hub cap**. Also see ⇒ page 243.

– Slacken the **wheel bolts**.

– **Raise** the car with the jack in the corresponding zone.

– **Remove** the wheel and then **mount** the spare wheel.

– **Lower** the vehicle.

– Tighten the wheel bolts **firmly** with the box spanner.

– Replace the **hub cap**. ■

## After changing a wheel

*After changing the wheel there are still tasks to complete.*

– Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.

– Place the wheel with the defective tyre in the luggage compartment and secure it.

– Check the tyre pressure of the newly fitted tyre as soon as possible.

– Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. The prescribed torque must be 120 Nm.

**Note**

- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing a wheel, they must be replaced before having the wheel bolt torque checked.
- For your safety, drive at moderate speeds until the wheel bolt torque has been checked. ■

## Wheel trims

*The wheel trims must be removed to gain access to the wheel bolts.*

**Fig. 170 Changing the wheel: Removing a hub cap**

### Removing

– Insert the **extraction hook** from the tools into the designated ring, located in one of the bolt hole covers of the wheel cover ⇒ fig. 170.

– Pull off the **hub cap**. ■

## Wheel covers*

*The wheel covers must be removed for access to the wheel bolts*

### Removing

– Remove the wheel cover using the wire hook.

– Hook this into one of the cut-outs of the wheel cover.

### Fitting

– Fit the wheel cover onto the wheel rim by pressing it firmly. Put pressure initially on the point of the cut-out for the valve. Then press the wheel cover onto the steel rim so that it engages all round. ■

## Loosening the wheel bolts

*The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.*

**Fig. 171 Changing the wheel: loosen the wheel bolts**

### Loosening

– Fit the **box spanner** as far as it will go over the wheel bolt.

– Grasp the box spanner by the end turn it about one full turn to the **left** ⇒ fig. 171.

### Tightening

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt.

– Grasp the box spanner close to the end and turn the bolt to the right until it is secured.

– An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts. ▶

**WARNING**

**Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack, loosening the wheel bolts more than one turn can result in an accident.**

**Note**

- Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
- If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip. ■

## Raising the vehicle

*In order to remove the wheel, the vehicle must be raised with a jack.*

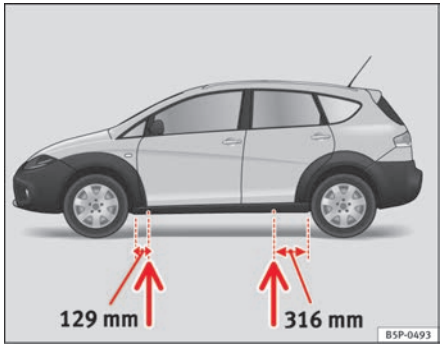


**Fig. 172 The jacking points**

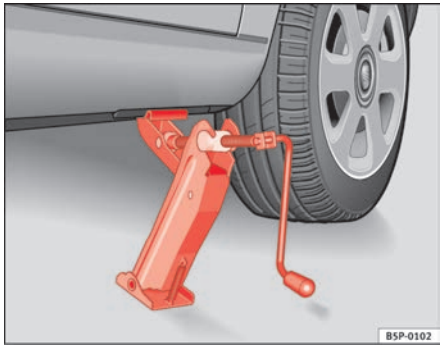


**Fig. 173 Fitting the jack**

– Locate the jacking point under the door sill closest to the wheel to be changed ⇒ fig. 172.

– Place the jack under the jacking point and turn the crank until the arm of the jack is directly below the vertical rib under the door sill.

– Align the jack so that the arm of the jack fits around the rib under the door sill and the movable base plate of the jack is flat on the ground ⇒ fig. 173.

– Raise the jack until the defective wheel is just clear of the ground.

Recesses at the front and rear of the door sills mark the jacking points ⇒ fig. 172. There is only one jacking point for each wheel. Do not fit the jack anywhere else.

An **unstable surface** under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Therefore, the jack must be fitted on solid ground offering good support. Use a large and stable base, if necessary. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.

**WARNING**

- **Take all precautions so that the base of the jack does not slip. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **The vehicle can be damaged if the jack is not applied at the correct jacking points. There is also a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.** ■

## Jack position points for vehicles with skirting*

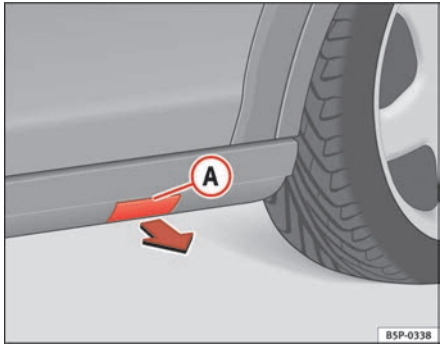


Fig. 174 Plastic skirting with jack allotment cover

### Vehicles with plastic skirting, with cover*

– Remove the cap (A) to access the anchor point for the vehicle jack ⇒ fig. 174.

– Pull on the cover and remove it from its allotment in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 174.

– Once the cover has been released, it will remain connected to its strap so that is not lost. ■

## Removing and fitting the wheel

*For removal and fitting the wheel, the following tasks must be completed.*

Fig. 175 Changing the wheel: Hexagonal socket in screwdriver handle to turn the wheel bolts

After loosening the wheel bolts and raising the vehicle with the jack, cange the wheel as described below:

### Removing a wheel

– Unscrew the bolts using the **hexagonal tool** in the handle of the screwdriver (vehicle tool) and place them on a clean surface ⇒ fig. 175.

### Fitting a wheel

– Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle. ▶

The wheel bolts should be clean and easily screwed. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the wheel condition and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle makes it easier to turn the wheel bolts. The reversible screwdriver blade should be removed when the tool is used for this purpose.

If tyres with a specific direction of rotation are fitted, note the direction of rotation.

**Note**

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts. ■

## Anti-theft wheel bolts

*A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel bolts.*

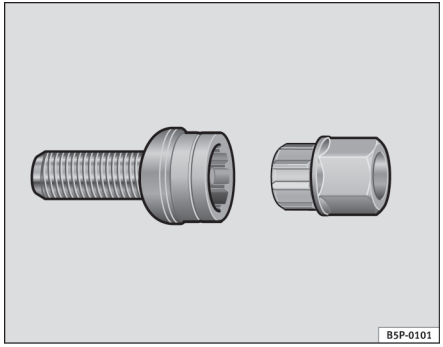


**Fig. 176 Anti-theft wheel bolt**

– Insert the adapter onto the wheel bolt and push it on as far as it will go ⇒ fig. 176.

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the adapter.

– Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt as appropriate.

**Error code**

The code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt is stamped onto the front part of the adaptor.

The code number should be noted and kept in a safe place, as it is only by using the code number that a duplicate adaptor can be obtained from an Authorised Service Centre. ■

## Tyres with directional tread pattern

*Tyres with directional tread pattern must be fitted so that they rotate in the correct direction.*

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

If, in an emergency, you have to fit the spare wheel so it rotates in the wrong direction, you must drive extremely carefully. The tyre will not give optimum performance. This is particularly important when driving on wet roads.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction. ■

# Tyre repair kit (Tyre-Mobility-System)*

## General information and safety notes

Your vehicle is equipped with a tyre repair kit: the **Tyre Mobility System**.

In the event of a tyre puncture, a **sealing compound** and an **air compressor** are located in the luggage compartment under the floor panel.

The Tyre Mobility System will reliably seal punctures caused by the penetration of a foreign body of up to about 4 mm in diameter.

It is not necessary to remove the foreign body from the tyre.

Instructions for the sealing compound are located on the sealing compound container.

Notes for the proper use of the air compressor are included in an additional instruction leaflet.

**WARNING**

- **Do not attempt to repair a puncture with the sealing compound if the tyre has been damaged by driving the car after the tyre has lost its air.**
- **Always observe warnings and follow instructions concerning compressor and sealing compound carefully.**
- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h, avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Tyres which have been repaired with sealing compound are only suitable for temporary use over a short period. Therefore, please drive carefully to the next available qualified workshop.**

**For the sake of the environment**

Used sealing compound containers should be disposed of at a proper facility.

**Note**

Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound. ■

## Preparation work

*Certain steps must be taken before repairing a tyre.*

– If you have a flat tyre or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Engage **first gear**, or put the selector lever to position **P**.

– All passengers should **leave** the vehicle. They should wait in a safe area (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

– Check whether a repair is possible using the Tyre Mobility System “General information and safety notes.”

– Unscrew inflation cap from the affected wheel.

– Take the **tyre repair kit** out of the luggage compartment.

**WARNING**

**Put the hazard warning lights on and place the warning triangle in position. This is for your own safety and also warns other road users.**

**Caution**

Take special care if you have to repair a tyre on a slope. ▶

**Note**

Please observe legal requirements when doing so. ■

## Tyre repair

*The following sections describe the procedures for repairing a tyre.*

**Using the sealing compound**

– The instructions on the container give detailed information on how to use the sealing compound.

**Inflating the tyre.**

– Remove the air compressor and hose from the container.

– Screw the retaining nut onto the valve.

– Plug the compressor cable into a 12 volt power point.

– Turn on compressor and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.

**Completing the repair**

– Remove the compressor hose from the valve.

– Fit the valve cap.

– Unplug the compressor from the socket.

– Return all tools to their proper storing location.

**Note**

- If the vehicle is equipped with tyre pressure control, enter the new tyre pressures using the SET button on the central console.
- The compressor should never be allowed to run for longer than 6 minutes. ■

# Fuses

## Changing a fuse

*Blown fuses must be replaced*

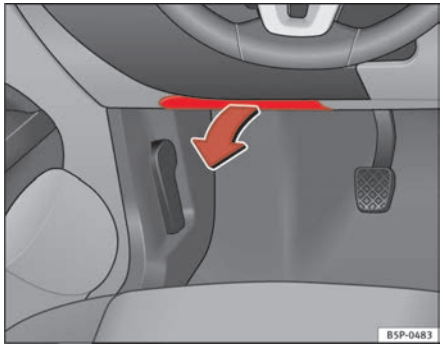


**Fig. 177 Left side of dash panel: Fuse box cover**

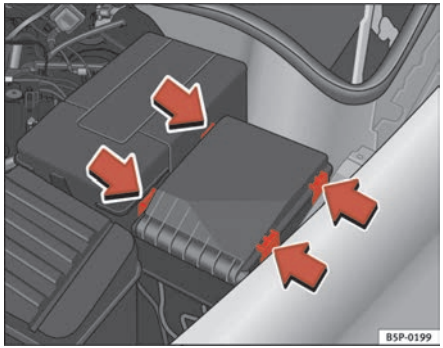


**Fig. 178 Fuse box cover in engine compartment**

**Fuse cover underneath the steering wheel**

– Switch off the ignition and the component concerned.

– Identify the fuse corresponding to the damaged electric consumer ⇒ page 253.

– Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover, fit it onto the blown fuse and pull the fuse out.

– Replace the blown fuse (which will have a melted metal strip) with a new fuse of the same ampere rating.

**Fuse cover in engine compartment**

– Switch off the ignition and its failed electrical component.

– Prise off the fuse cover in the engine compartment by pressing the tabs towards the centre of the cover ⇒ fig. 178.

– Identify the fuse for the failed component ⇒ page 253.

– Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover (at left-hand end of the dash panel), fit it onto the blown fuse and pull the fuse out.

– Replace the blown fuse (which will have a melted metal strip) with a new fuse of the same ampere rating.

– Carefully fit the fuse cover back on to ensure no water can enter the fuse box.

The individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located behind a cover at the left-hand end of the dash panel and on the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

The electric windows are protected by **circuit breakers**. These reset automatically after a few seconds when the overload (caused for example by frozen windows) has been corrected.

**Fuses colour code**

| Colour | Amperes |
|---|---|
| light brown | 5 |
| Red | 10 |
| Blue | 15 |
| Yellow | 20 |
| Natural (white) | 25 |
| Green | 30 |
| orange | 40 |
| Red | 50 |
| white | 80 |
| Blue | 100 |
| grey | 150 |
| violet | 200 |

**WARNING**

**Never “repair” damaged fuses and never replace them with fuses with a higher rating. Failure to comply could result in fire. This could also cause damage to other parts of the electrical system.**

**Note**

- If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If you replace a fuse with higher-rating fuse, you could cause damage to another location in the electrical system.
- Always keep some spare fuses in the vehicle. These are available from SEAT dealers.
- Apart from the fuses indicated in the following tables, there are others which must be replaced by a Technical Service. ■

## Fuses on left side of dash panel

**Fuses**

| Number | Consumer | Amperes |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Vacant | |
| 2 | Vacant | |
| 3 | Vacant | |
| 4 | Vacant | |
| 5 | Vacant | |
| 6 | Vacant | |
| 7 | Vacant | |
| 8 | Vacant | |
| 9 | Airbag | 5 |
| 10 | RSE input (roof screen) | 10 |
| 11 | Vacant | |
| 11 | Vacant | |
| 12 | Left xenon headlight | 10 |
| 13 | Instrument panel (oil level)/Switchboard wiring (BCM)/Heater / ABS, ESP/ Park Pilot/ Gateway/Flow meter | 5 |
| 14 | Gearbox/Servosteering/Brake light sensor/ Trailer/ ABS, ESP/ Haldex/ Light switch | 10 |
| 15 | Heated windscreen / Instrument lighting / Diagnosis switchboard/Engine management/Additional heating/AFS headlamps/Park Pilot | 10 |
| 16 | Right xenon headlight | 10 |
| 17 | Engine management | 10 |
| 18 | Vacant | |
| 19 | Vacant | |
| 20 | Park Pilot (Parking assistant) / Gear lever/ ESP switchboard | 10 |
| 21 | Vacant | |
| 22 | Volumetric alarm sensor/ Alarm horn | 5 |
| 23 | Diagnosis / Rain sensor / Light switch | 10 |
| 24 | Vacant | |
| 25 | Switchboard coupling automatic gearbox | 20 |
| 26 | Vacuum pump | 20 |
| 27 | RSE input (roof screen) | 10 |
| 28 | Rear wiper motor / Switchboard wiring | 20 |
| 29 | Vacant | |
| 30 | Cigarette lighter / socket | 20 |
| 31 | Vacant | |
| 32 | Vacant | |
| 33 | Heater | 40 |
| 34 | Vacant | |
| 35 | Vacant | |
| 36 | Engine management | 10 |
| 37 | Engine management | 10 |
| 38 | Engine management | 10 |
| 39 | Trailer control unit (coupling) | 15 |

| Number | Consumer | Amperes |
|---|---|---|
| 40 | Trailer control unit (indicators, brakes and left side) | 20 |
| 41 | Trailer control unit (fog light, reversing light and right side) | 20 |
| 42 | BCM wiring switchboard | 20 |
| 43 | Trailer pre-installation | 40 |
| 44 | Rear window heater | 25 |
| 45 | Electric windows (front) | 30 |
| 46 | Rear electric windows | 30 |
| 47 | Engine (Fuel control unit, petrol relay) | 15 |
| 48 | Convenience controls | 20 |
| 49 | Heating controls | 40 |
| 50 | Heated seats | 30 |
| 51 | Sunroof | 20 |
| 52 | Headlight washer system | 20 |
| 53 | Vacant | 20 |
| 54 | Taxi (taximeter power supply) | 5 |
| 55 | Vacant | 20 |
| 56 | Taxi (taximeter power supply) | 15 |
| 57 | Vacant | |
| 58 | Central locking control unit | 30 |

Some of the electrical items listed in the table are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Please note that the above list, while correct at the time of printing, is subject to alterations. If discrepancies should occur, please refer to the sticker on the inside of the fuse cover for the correct information for your model. ■

## Fuses layout, engine compartment, left part

**Fuses**

| Number | Consumer | Amperes |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Windscreen wipers | 20 |
| 2 | DQ200 gearbox | 30 |
| 3 | Cable control unit | 5 |
| 4 | ABS | 20 |
| 5 | AQ gearbox | 15 |
| 6 | Instrument panel/Steering column | 5 |
| 7 | Ignition key | 40 |
| 8 | Radio | 15 |
| 9 | Telephone/TomTom Navigator | 5 |
| 10 | Engine management | 5 |
| | Engine management | 10 |
| 11 | Vacant | |
| 12 | Electronic control unit | 5 |
| 13 | Petrol injection module supply | 15 |
| | Diesel injection module supply | 30 |
| 14 | Coil | 20 |

| Number | Consumer | Amperes |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | Engine management | 5 |
| | Pump relay | 10 |
| 16 | Right lighting | 30 |
| 17 | Horn | 15 |
| 18 | Vacant | |
| 19 | Clean | 30 |
| 20 | Water pump | 10 |
| | Pressure sensor pump for 1.8 engine | 20 |
| 21[a)] | Lambda probe | 15 |
| 22 | Brake pedal, speed sensor | 5 |
| 23[a)] | Engine management | 5 |
| | Engine management | 10 |
| | Engine management | 15 |
| 24 | AKF, gearbox valve | 10 |
| 25[a)] | ABS pump | 40 |
| 26 | Left lighting | 30 |
| 27[a)] | Engine management | 40 |
| | Engine management | 50 |
| 28 | Vacant | |
| 29[a)] | Electric windows (front and back) | 50 |
| | Electric windows (front) | 30 |
| 30 | Ignition key | 50 |

a) Ampere rating according to motorisation

# Bulb change

## General notes

Before changing any bulb, first turn off the failed component.

Do not touch the bulb glass. Fingerprints vaporise in the heat, causing a reduction in the bulb life and condensation on the mirror surface, thus reducing efficiency.

A bulb should only be replaced by one of the same type. The type is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

It is highly recommended to keep a box of spare bulbs in the vehicle. At the very least, the following spare bulbs, which are essential for road safety, should be kept in the vehicle.

**Main headlights**

Dipped beam - H7
Main beam - H1
Position - W5W
Indicator - PY21W

**Xenon headlights[22)] /self-directing**

Dipped and full beam - D1S[23)]
Daylight - P21W SLL
Position W5W
Indicators PY21W

22) On this type of headlight, the bulb changes must be made by the SEAT dealer, given that complex elements must be removed from the vehicle and a reset must be made on the automatic control system incorporated.

23) The Xenon bulbs discharge 2.5 times the light flux and have an average lifespan of 5 times more than that of halogen bulbs, this means that, except due to unusual circumstances, there is no need to change the bulbs for the whole life of the vehicle.

**Fog lights**

Fog lights - H3

**Fixed rear light**

Stop/Position - P21W[24)]

Indicator - P21W

**Rear tailgate light unit**

Fog light (driver's side) - P21W

Reverse (passenger's side) - P21W

Position - W5W

**Side indicator**

Side indicator - W5W

**Registration plate light**

Registration plate light - C5W

**Note**

- Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the front lights, the fog lights, the rear lights and the indicators may be temporarily misted. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the lighting system. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted. However, the edges may continue to be misted.
- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also in that of all other road users.
- Due to the difficulty in accessing the lamps, any replacement work should be done by a SEAT dealer. However, the following is a description of how to change the lamps except for the fog lights* and interior lamps. ■

24) Electronically controlled single filament bulb for Stop/side bulbs. If the bulb blows it will not work in either position or Stop.

## Main headlight lamps

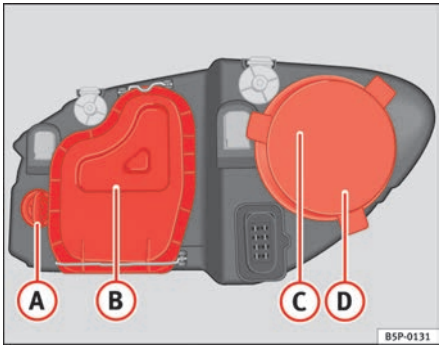


Fig. 179 Main headlight lamps

(A) Indicator
(B) Dipped headlights
(C) Main beam headlights
(D) Side lights ■

## Turn signal lamps

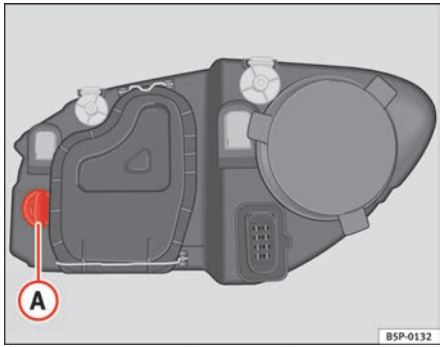


Fig. 180 Turn signal lamps

– Raise the bonnet.

– Rotate the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 180 (A) to the left and pull.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the lamp holder and rotating at the same time to the left.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

## Dipped beam lights

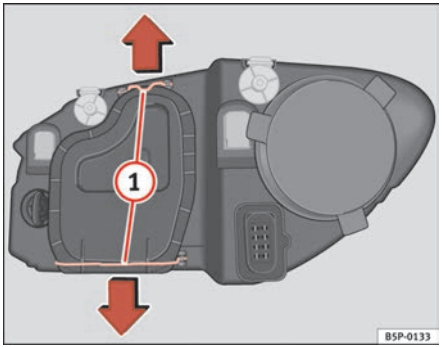


Fig. 181 Dipped head-lights

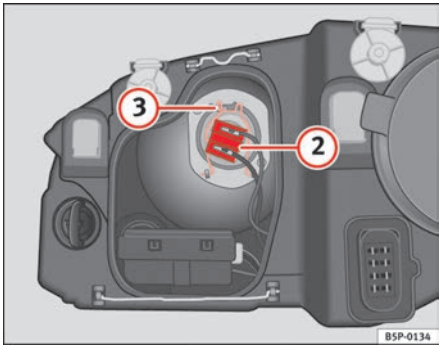


Fig. 182 Dipped head-lights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the loops ⇒ page 257, fig. 181 (1) in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Remove the connector ⇒ page 257, fig. 182 (2) from the bulb.

– Disengage the retainer spring ⇒ page 257, fig. 182 (3) pressing inwards to the right.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that the rim of the attachment plate is on the reflector cut-out. ■

## Main beam lights

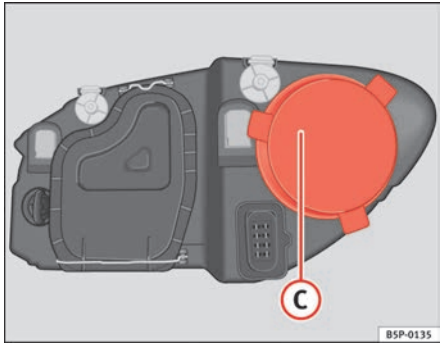


Fig. 183 Main beam headlights

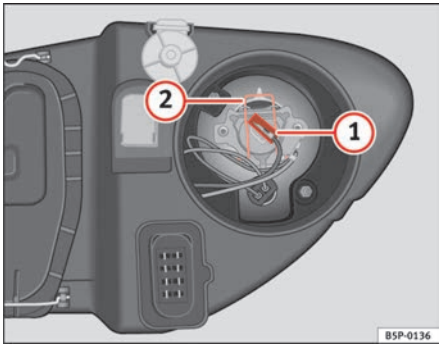


Fig. 184 Main beam headlights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the cover ⇒ fig. 183 (C) by pulling on this.

– Remove the connector ⇒ fig. 184 (1) from the bulb.

– Press the spring ⇒ fig. 184 (2) inwards and to the right.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that it sits correctly into the cut-out on the reflector.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

## Side lights

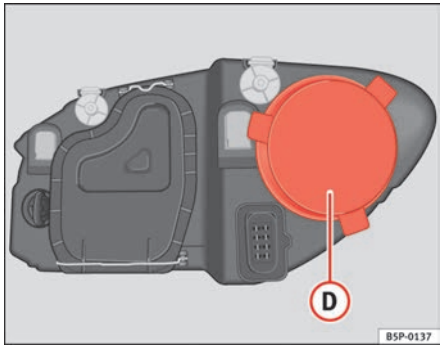


Fig. 185 Side lights

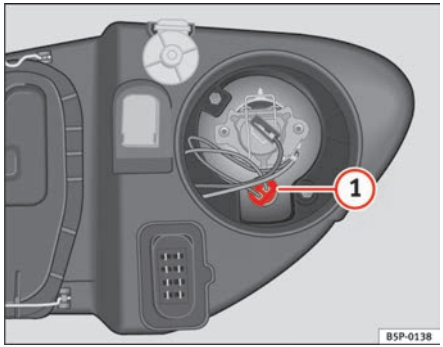


Fig. 186 Side lights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the cover ⇒ fig. 185 (D) by pulling on this.

– Extract the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 186 (1) outwards.

– Replace the bulb by pulling this out and inserting the replacement.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

## Rear lights

- On the body
  – Indicator, side and brake light
- On the tailgate
  – Left side: position and antifog.
  – Right side: reverse and position.

## Indicator, side and brake lights on the bodywork

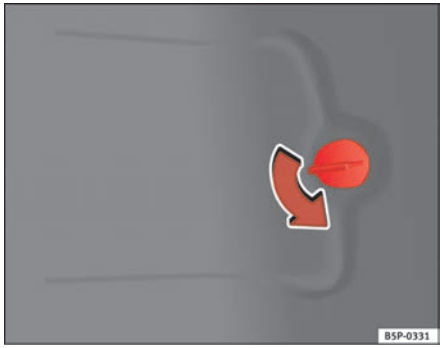


Fig. 187 Lights on vehicle body

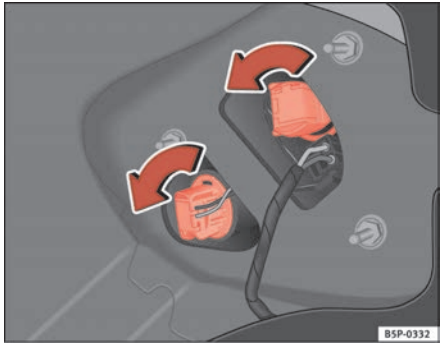


Fig. 188 Lights on vehicle body

– Remove the cover of the luggage compartment lateral panel ⇒ fig. 187.

– Turn the lampholder to the left ⇒ fig. 188.

– Extract the failed bulb and change it for a new one.

– To refit follow the steps in reverse order, taking special care when fitting the lamp holder. ■

## Position light, fog light and reverse light on the tailgate

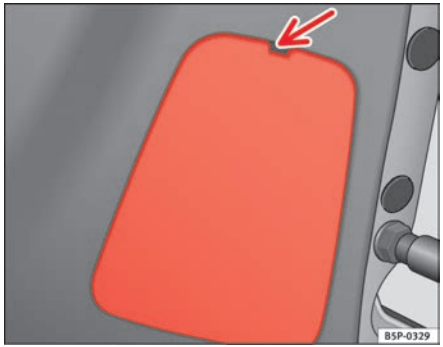


Fig. 189 Lights on the tailgate

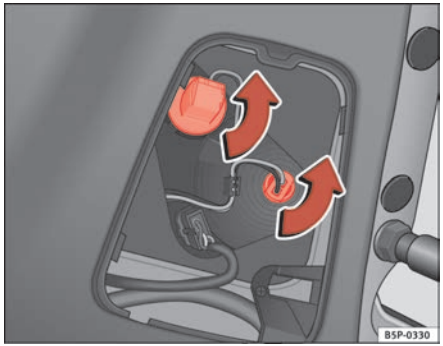


Fig. 190 Side lights

### Side lights

– Open the tailgate.

– Pull the cover off.

– Take the lampholder out pressing on the securing pins and extract it outwards.

– Remove the blown bulb and replace it with another.

– To refit follow the steps in reverse order, taking special care when fitting the lamp holder.

### Antifog and reverse light

– Open the tailgate.

– Pull the cover off.

– Turn the lampholder to the left.

– Remove the blown bulb and replace it with another.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

## Side indicators

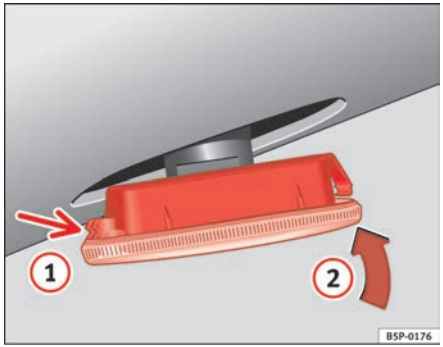


Fig. 191 Side indicator

- Press the indicator to the left or to the right to remove the lamp.
- Remove the lamp holder from the indicator.
- Remove the failed glass bulb and replace with a new bulb.
- Insert the lamp holder in the indicator guide until it clicks into place.
- First place the indicator in the opening in the bodywork, fixing the tabs ⇒ fig. 191, arrow (1).
- Insert the bulb as shown by the arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 191. ■

## Luggage compartment lights

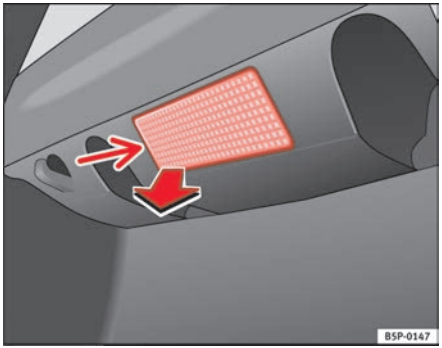


Fig. 192 Luggage compartment light

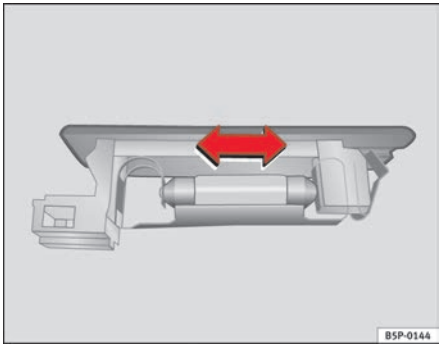


Fig. 193 Luggage compartment light

- Remove the bulb by pressing on the inside edge of this -arrow- using the flat side of a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 192.

– Press the lamp sideways and remove it from the housing ⇒ page 262, fig. 193. ■

## Registration light

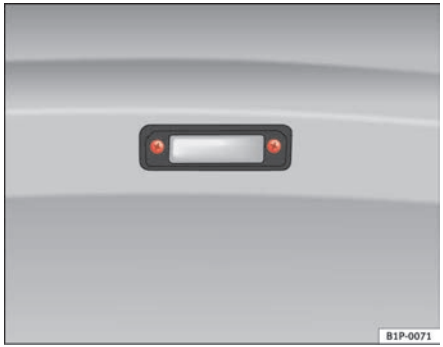


**Fig. 194 Registration plate light**

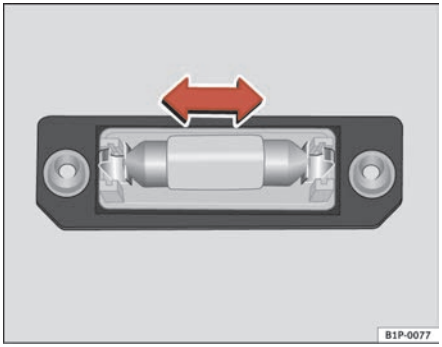


**Fig. 195 Registration plate light**

– To remove the bulb holder, unscrew the bolts ⇒ fig. 194.

– Remove the bulb, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ⇒ fig. 195.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

## Sunroof light

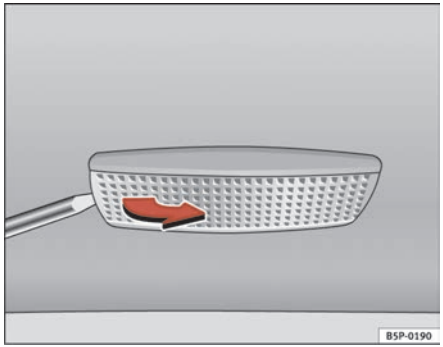


Fig. 196 Removing sunroof light

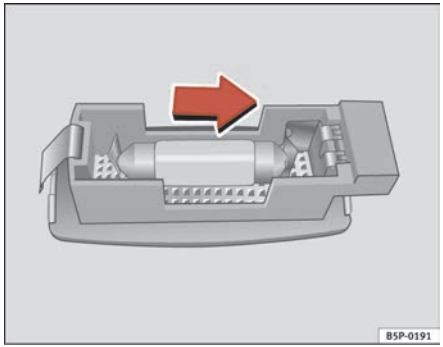


Fig. 197 Removing sunroof light

– Carefully remove the lamp, using the flat side of the screwdriver, as shown in the figure ⇒ fig. 197.

– Remove the bulb, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ⇒ fig. 197. ■

# Jump-starting

## Jump leads

*The jump lead must have a sufficient wire cross section.*

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

### Jump leads

Jump leads must comply with the standard **DIN 72553** (see manufacturer's documentation). The wire cross section must be at least 25 $mm^2$ for petrol engines and at least 35 $mm^2$ for diesel engines.

**Note**

- The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system. ■

## How to jump start: description

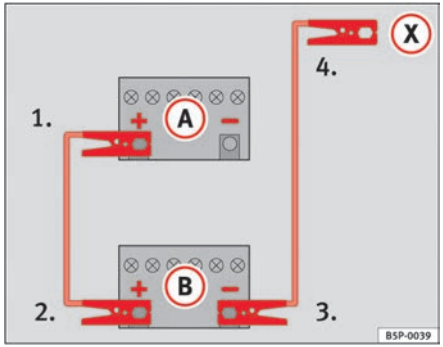


Fig. 198 How to connect the jump leads

⇒ fig. 198 (A) shows the flat battery and (B) the charged battery.

### Jump lead terminal connections

– Switch off the ignition on both vehicles ⇒ ⚠.

1. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive ⇒ fig. 198 (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery ⇒ ⚠.
2. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Connect one end of the black jump lead to the negative terminal (-) on the battery of the vehicle providing assistance.
4. Connect the other end of the black jump lead (X) to a solid metal component which is bolted on to the engine block, or onto the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery ⇒ ⚠.
5. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

### Starting

6. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
7. Start the engine of the car with the flat battery and wait one or two minutes until the engine is “running”.

### Removing the jump leads

8. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the headlights (if they are switched on).
9. Turn on the heater blower and rear window heater in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
10. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute.

**WARNING**

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 215, “Working in the engine compartment”.**
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Do not attach the negative cable from the other vehicle to parts of the fuel system or to the brake line.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

**Note**

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. ■

# Towing and tow-starting

## Tow-starting

*The use of jump leads is preferable to tow-starting.*

We recommend that you do **not** tow-start your vehicle. Jump-starting is preferable ⇒ page 264.

**However, if your vehicle has to be tow-started:**

– Engage the 2nd or the 3rd gear.

– Keep the clutch pressed down.

– Switch the ignition on.

– Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.

– As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and move the gear lever into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

**WARNING**

**The risk of accidents is high when tow-starting. The vehicle being towed can easily collide with the towing vehicle.**

**Caution**

When tow-starting, fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

## General notes

Please observe the following points if you use a tow-rope:

**Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle**

– Drive slowly at first until the tow-rope is taut. Then accelerate gradually.

– Begin and change gears cautiously. If you are driving an automatic vehicle, accelerate gently.

– Remember that the brake servo and power steering are not working in the vehicle you are towing. Brake earlier than you would normally, but with a more gentle pressure on the brake.

**Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle**

– Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

**Tow-rope or tow-bar**

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar.

A tow-rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing eyes provided or a towing bracket.

**Driving style**

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow-start or tow away another vehicle. ▶

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking and also to allow the use of the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers.

As the brake servo does not work if the engine is not running, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you normally would.

As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.

**Towing vehicles with an automatic gearbox**

- Put the selector lever into position “N”.
- Do not drive faster than 50 km/h when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow further than 50 km.
- If a breakdown vehicle is used, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels raised.

**Note**

- Observe legal requirements when towing or tow-starting.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights of both vehicles. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.
- For technical reasons, vehicles with an automatic gearbox must not be tow-started.
- If damage to your vehicle means that there is no lubricant in the gearbox, you must raise the drive wheels while the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle has to be towed more than 50 km, the front wheels must be raised during towing, and towing should be carried out by a qualified person.
- The steering wheel is locked when the vehicle has no electrical power. The vehicle must then be towed with the front wheels raised. Towing should be carried out by a qualified person.
- The towing eye should always be kept in the vehicle. Please refer to the notes on ⇒ page 267, “Tow-starting”. ■

## Trailer eyes

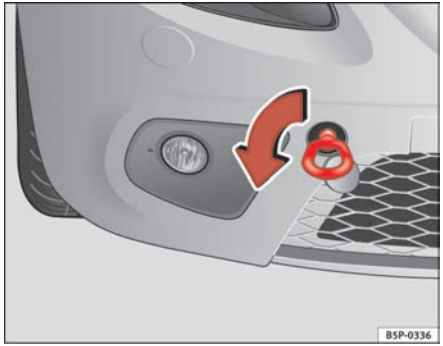


Fig. 199 The front right section of the vehicle: Fitting the front towing eye

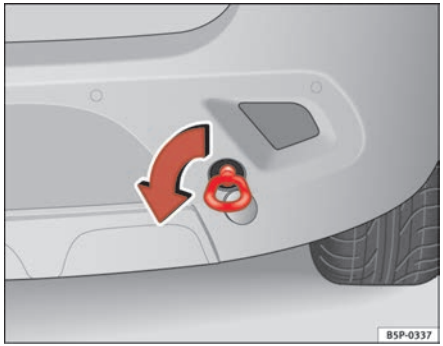


Fig. 200 Fitting the towing eye to the rear of the vehicle

### Fitting the towing eye

– Take the towing ring from the onboard tool set.

– Pull the lower front cover down and leave the cover hanging on the vehicle.

– Remove the cover of the screw hole, insert a screwdriver into the lower slot and lever gently.

– Screw the towing eye as shown by the arrow *anti-clockwise* to the limit position in the front ⇒ fig. 199 or rear ⇒ fig. 200 threaded hole. ■

# Technical Data

## General notes on the technical data

### Outstanding information

#### Important considerations

*All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over this data.*

All data provided in this manual are valid for the standard model in Spain. The vehicle data card included in the inspection and maintenance schedule in the vehicles registration documents show which engine is installed in the vehicle.

The figures may be different depending on if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

**Abbreviations used in this paragraph of the Technical Data**

| Abbreviation | Meaning |
|---|---|
| kW | Kilowatt, engine power measurement. |
| bhp | Brake horse power, formerly used to denote engine power |
| at rpm | Revolutions per minute - engine speed. |
| Nm | Newton metres, unit of engine torque. |
| l/100 km | Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km. |
| g/km | Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per km travelled. |
| $CO_2$ | Carbon dioxide |
| CN | Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power. |
| RON | Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol. |

## Vehicle identification data

*The most important data are given on the type plate and the vehicle data sticker.*

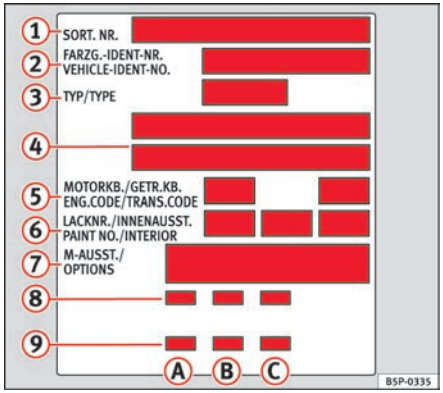


**Fig. 201 Vehicle data sticker – boot**

Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

### Type plate

The type plate is located on the left rib inside the engine compartment.

### Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen. This is located on the left-hand side of the vehicle in the lower area of the windscreen. It is also located on the right hand side of the engine compartment.

### Vehicle data

The data sticker is placed on the inside of the spare wheel recess in the luggage compartment.

The following information is provided on the vehicle data sticker: ⇒ fig. 201.

These data are also provided in the Maintenance Program.

1. Production control number
2. Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
3. Model code number
4. Model designation / engine power output
5. Engine and gearbox code letters
6. Paintwork number / interior trim code
7. Optional equipment codes
8. Consumption values
9. $CO_2$ emissions values.

Data from 2 to 9 are also provided in the Maintenance Program.

### Consumption figures and $CO_2$

- A Consumption (litres/100 km) / $CO_2$ emissions (g/km) urban.
- B Consumption (litres/100 km) / $CO_2$ emissions (g/km), road.
- C Consumption (litres/100 km) / $CO_2$ emissions (g/km) combination.

# Data on fuel consumption

## Fuel consumption

*The consumption and emission details shown on the vehicle data sticker differ from one vehicle to another.*

The fuel consumption and $CO_2$ emissions of the vehicle can be found on the vehicle data sticker.

The fuel consumption and emissions figures given are based on the vehicle weight category, which is determined according to the engine/gearbox combination and the equipment fitted.

The consumption and emission figures are calculated in accordance with the EC test requirements 1999/100/EC. These test requirements specify a realistic test method based on normal everyday driving.

The following test conditions are applied:

| | |
|---|---|
| Urban cycle | The urban cycle starts with an engine cold start. City driving is then simulated. |
| Extra urban cycle | In the extra urban cycle simulation the vehicle frequently accelerates and brakes in all gears, as in normal everyday driving. The road speed ranges from 0 to 120 km/h. |
| Total consumption | The average total consumption is calculated with a weighting of around 37% for the urban cycle and 63% for the extra urban cycle. |
| $CO_2$ emissions | The exhaust gases are collected during both driving cycles to calculate carbon dioxide emissions. The gas composition is then analysed to evaluate the $CO_2$ content and other emissions. |

**Note**

- Actual consumption may vary from quoted test values, depending on personal driving style, road and traffic conditions, the weather and the vehicle condition. ■

## Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

For special versions and optional equipment fittings or for the addition of accessories, the weight of the vehicle will increase ⇒ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.** ■

# Towing a trailer

## Trailer weights

**Trailer weights**

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in the *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data ⇒ ⚠.

**Drawbar load**

The *maximum* permitted weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed **75 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with an axle base of less than 1 metre), at least 4% of the actual trailer weight is a legal stipulation for a drawbar load.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For safety reasons, do not exceed the 80 km/h limit. This is also valid in countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the draw bar loading. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.** ■

# Technical Data

## Checking fluid levels

*From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, otherwise serious damage to the engine may be caused.*

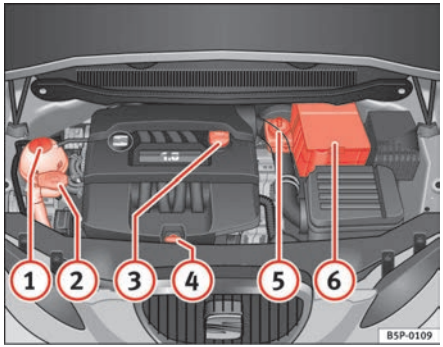


**Fig. 202 Diagram for the location of the various elements**

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Vehicle battery (underneath the cover)

The checking and refilling of service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned above. These operations are described in the ⇒ page 215.

**Overview**

Further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical data are contained as of ⇒ page 271. ■

# Diesel engine 2.0l 103 kW (140 bhp). Front-wheel drive

### General engine data

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Power output in kW (HP) | rpm | 103 (140)/ 4000 |
| Maximum torque | in Nm at rpm | 320/ 1750 - 2500 |
| No. of cylinders, capacity | in $cm^3$ | 4/ 1968 |
| Compression | | 18,5 ± 0,5 |
| Fuel | | Min. 51 CZ |

### Performance figures

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum speed | in km/h | 196 |
| Acceleration from 0-80 km/h | in sec. | 7,1 |
| Acceleration from 0-100 km/h | in sec. | 10,2 |

### Weights

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Gross vehicle weight | in kg | 2124 |
| Weight in working order (with driver) | in kg | 1579 |
| Front gross axle weight | in kg | 1096 |
| Rear gross axle weight | in kg | 1041 |
| Permitted roof load | in kg | 75 |

### Trailer weights

| | |
|---|---|
| Trailer without brakes | 750 |
| Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8% | 1650 |
| Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12% | 1400 |

### Engine oil capacity

| | |
|---|---|
| Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change | 4.5 litres |

## Diesel engine 2.0l 125 kW (170 bhp). four-wheel drive

### General engine data

| General engine data | | |
|---|---|---|
| Power output in kW (bhp) | rpm | 125 (170)/ 4200 |
| Maximum torque | in Nm at rpm | 350/1750-2500 |
| No. of cylinders, capacity | in $cm^3$ | 4/ 1968 |
| Compression | | 18,5 ± 0,5 |
| Fuel | | Min. 51 CZ |

### Performance figures

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum speed | in km/h | 204 |
| Acceleration from 0-80 km/h | in sec. | 5,9 |
| Acceleration from 0-100 km/h | in sec. | 8,7 |

### Weights

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Gross vehicle weight | in kg | 2160 |
| Weight in working order (with driver) | in kg | 1615 |
| Front gross axle weight | in kg | 1115 |
| Rear gross axle weight | in kg | 1086 |
| Permitted roof load | in kg | 75 |

**Trailer weights**

| | |
|---|---|
| Trailer without brakes | 750 |
| With brakes, gradients up to 8% | 1650 |
| With brakes, gradients up to 12% | 1650 |

**Engine oil capacity**

| | |
|---|---|
| Engine oil capacity with oil filter change. | 5.5 litres |

# Dimensions and capacities

| Dimensions | | |
|---|---|---|
| Length, width | 4,493 mm/ 1,778 mm | |
| Height at kerb weight | 1,615 mm | |
| Front and rear projection | 940 mm/ 977 mm | |
| Wheelbase | 2,578 mm | |
| Turning circle | 10,7 | |
| Track width | **Front** | **Rear** |
| | 1,542 mm | 1,527 mm |
| **Capacities** | | |
| Fuel tank | 60 l. Reserve 8l. | |
| Windscreen washer fluid container with headlight washer | 3 l/ 5.5 l | |
| **Tyre pressure** | | |
| **Summer-grade tyres:**<br>The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap.<br>**Winter tyres:**<br>The pressure of these tyres is the same as the summer tyre pressure plus 0.2 bar. | | |

# Index

## A


ABS . . . . . 186
Warning lamp . . . . . 79
Accessories . . . . . 210
Acoustic signal . . . . . 19
Acoustic warning . . . . . 167
Adjusting the seat belt height . . . . . 27
AFS (curve lights) . . . . . 115
Air conditioner*
2C-Climatronic* . . . . . 159
Air conditioning system
General notes . . . . . 163
Air conditioning* . . . . . 155
Air recirculation mode
2C-Climatronic . . . . . 163
Manual air conditioning . . . . . 157
Airbag covers . . . . . 36
Airbag system . . . . . 30
Curtain airbags . . . . . 41
Front airbags . . . . . 34
Side airbags . . . . . 37
Warning lamp . . . . . 31
Alarm system
Switching off . . . . . 102
Alternator
Warning lamp . . . . . 80
Ambient temperature display . . . . . 64, 71
Anti-freeze . . . . . 222
Anti-lock brake system . . . . . 186
Warning lamp . . . . . 79
Anti-puncture tyres . . . . . 235
Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 102
Switching off . . . . . 102
Anti-theft wheel bolts . . . . . 244
Aquaplaning . . . . . 235
Ashtray* . . . . . 146
Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*
Activating the anti-dazzle function . . . . . 127
Deactivating anti-dazzle function . . . . . 127
Automatic car wash tunnel . . . . . 202
Automatic gearbox / DSG automatic gearbox . 172
Automatic lighting . . . . . 112
Automatic mode
2C-Climatronic . . . . . 161
Automatic wiper/wash function for the rear window 126
Auxiliary audio connection: AUX-IN . . . . . 148


## B


Ball coupling . . . . . 198
BAS . . . . . 185
Battery
Changing . . . . . 231
Charging . . . . . 231
Winter conditions . . . . . 229
Belt tension device
Disposal . . . . . 28
Warning lamp . . . . . 31
Belt tension devices . . . . . 28
Biodiesel . . . . . 214
Biodiesel fuel . . . . . 214
Bonnet . . . . . 217
Boot . . . . . 150
Brake assist system . . . . . 185
Brake fluid . . . . . 228
Changing . . . . . 228
Warning lamp . . . . . 65
Brake pads . . . . . 192
Brake servo . . . . . 185, 192
Brake system . . . . . 228
Brake servo . . . . . 190
Brakes . . . . . 190
Warning lamp . . . . . 81
Brakes . . . . . 192
Braking distance . . . . . 192
Bulb changes
general notes . . . . . 255
Bulb defect
warning lamp . . . . . 81

Buzzer . . . . . 118, 167

## C

Catalytic converter . . . . . 193
CD changer . . . . . 137
Central locking . . . . . 93
Automatic locking system for involuntary unlocking . . . . . 95
Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system* . . . . . 95
Emergency unlocking system . . . . . 95
Selective unlocking system* . . . . . 94
Unlocking system* . . . . . 95
Central locking button
Central locking . . . . . 96
unlocking . . . . . 96
Centre arm rest . . . . . 137
Cetane number . . . . . 214
Changing gear
*See* Manual gearbox . . . . . 171
Changing the lamps
Main headlight lamps . . . . . 256
rear lights . . . . . 259
Changing the main headlight lamps
dipped beam lights . . . . . 257
main beam lights . . . . . 258
Side lights . . . . . 259
turn signal lamps . . . . . 257
Changing the rear light lamps
Position light, fog light and rear light on the tailgate . . . . . 261
Changing the rear lights
Indicator, side and brake lights on the bodywork . . . . . 260
luggage compartment lights . . . . . 262
Changing windscreen wiper blades . . . . . 225
Chassis number . . . . . 272
Checking . . . . . 230
Checking battery electrolyte level . . . . . 230
Checking engine oil level . . . . . 219
Child safety . . . . . 46
Child seat . . . . . 48
Categorisation in groups . . . . . 48
Group 1 . . . . . 49
Group 2 . . . . . 49
Group 3 . . . . . 49
Groups 0 and 0+ . . . . . 48
ISOFIX system . . . . . 51
Safety notes . . . . . 47
Securing . . . . . 51
Child seats
on the front passenger seat . . . . . 31
Cigarette lighter* . . . . . 146
Cleaning alloy wheel rims . . . . . 206
Cleaning chrome . . . . . 205
Cleaning engine compartment . . . . . 207
Cleaning steel wheel rims . . . . . 206
Cleaning windows . . . . . 204
Climatic* . . . . . 155
Climatronic
General notes . . . . . 163
Clock . . . . . 59
Cloth seat covers cleaning . . . . . 208
Clothes hook . . . . . 141
Cockpit . . . . . 55
Control lamps . . . . . 75
Control lighting . . . . . 55
Controls
Electric windows . . . . . 106
Light switches . . . . . 111
Convenience closing
Sliding/tilting roof . . . . . 109
Windows . . . . . 108
Convenience opening
Windows . . . . . 108
Coolant . . . . . 222, 223
Coolant . . . . . 65
Coolant Level . . . . . 223
Coolant level
warning light . . . . . 77
Coolant Loss . . . . . 223
Coolant temperature
Display . . . . . 58
Safety instructions . . . . . 78
Cruise control system . . . . . 180
Warning lamp . . . . . 82
Cruise control*
Turning off the cruise control system . . . . 182
Curtain airbags . . . . . 41
Description . . . . . 41
Function . . . . . 42
Safety notes . . . . . 42

## D


Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat . . . 31
Dash panel cleaning . . . 208
Daytime lights . . . 113
activating . . . 113
deactivating . . . 113
Diesel . . . 214
Diesel engine
Winter driving . . . 215
Diesel engine particulate filter . . . 194
Differential lock . . . 188
Differential lock fault (EDL)
warning lamp . . . 84
Digital clock . . . 59
Dipped headlights . . . 111
Disabling front passenger airbag
Safety notes . . . 45
Disabling the airbag
Disabling front passenger airbag . . . 44
Display (without warning or information texts) . 60
Displays in the Multi-function display
Memory displays . . . 63
Disposal
Airbags . . . 32
Door lock cylinders . . . 205
Door release lever . . . 55
Doors
Childproof locks . . . 98
Warning lamp . . . 82
Drawer . . . 138
Drinks holders at the front . . . 142
Drive wheels traction control system . . . 186
Driveshaft differential
XDS . . . 187
Driving
Driving abroad . . . 196
Economical/ Environtmental . . . 194
With a trailer . . . 198
Driving abroad . . . 196
Headlights . . . 196
Driving programmes . . . 172
Driving safety . . . 8
Driving with an automatic gearbox / DSG automatic gearbox* . . . 173
Duplicate keys . . . 99
Dust filter . . . 163
Dynamic curve lights . . . 115
Dynamic headlight range control . . . 115


## E


Ecological driving . . . 194
Economical driving . . . 194
EDL . . . 188
EDS
Warning lamp . . . 79
Electric steering system
warning light . . . 82
Electrical sockets . . . 147
Electronic differential lock . . . 188
Warning lamp . . . 79
Electronic immobiliser . . . 84, 168
Electronic stabilisation program . . . 187
Electronic stabilisation programme . . . 83
Description . . . 166
Warning light . . . 167
Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)
warning lamp . . . 83
Emergency braking function . . . 117, 185
emergency manual locking . . . 97
Emergency opening
Doors . . . 102
Emission control system
warning lamp . . . 83
Engine
Running in . . . 192
Engine compartment
Working in the engine compartment . . . 215
Engine coolant . . . 222
Engine fault
Warning lamp . . . 78
Engine management
Warning lamp . . . 78
Engine oil . . . 218
Changing . . . 221
Checking level . . . 219
Oil properties . . . 219
Specifications . . . 218
Topping up . . . 220
Engine oil dipstick . . . 219

Engine oil pressure
monitor indicator . . . . . 65
Warning lamp . . . . . 82
Environment . . . . . 194
Environmental friendliness . . . . . 195
Environmental tip
Avoiding pollution . . . . . 213
ESP . . . . . 83, 187
Example of menu use
Program a speed limit warning . . . . . 67
To activate and deactivate the speed limit warning . . . . . 67
Example of the use of the menus
Open the Configuration menu with the MFD lever . . . . . 66
Open the Configuration menu with the steering wheel controls . . . . . 67
Examples of menu use
Open the main menu . . . . . 66
Open the winter tyres menu . . . . . 67
To close the winter tyres menu . . . . . 67
Exhaust gasses purification system . . . . . 193
Exterior mirrors . . . . . 204

# F

Fabric trim cleaning . . . . . 208
Fastening rings . . . . . 18
Fire extinguisher . . . . . 149
Floor mats . . . . . 16
Fog lights . . . . . 111
folding table* . . . . . 138
Folding the seat backrests down . . . . . 136
Foot brake
Warning lamp . . . . . 84
Four wheel drive . . . . . 189
Front airbags . . . . . 34
Description . . . . . 34
Front interior light type 1
Switching light off . . . . . 119
Switching light on . . . . . 119
Front interior light type 2
Switching light off . . . . . 120
Switching light on . . . . . 120
Front passenger airbag deactivation . . . . . 44
Front reading lights . . . . . 121
Front seat adjustment
Lumbar support . . . . . 133
Frontal airbags
Operation . . . . . 35
safety notes . . . . . 37
Fuel
Diesel . . . . . 214
Petrol . . . . . 213
Fuel level
Indicator . . . . . 58
Fuel reserve . . . . . 77
warning message . . . . . 65
Fuel Tank
Opening the fuel tank flap . . . . . 212
Fuel tank
*See* Fuel reserve . . . . . 77
Fuel: saving . . . . . 194
Fuses . . . . . 251

# G

G 12 . . . . . 222
Gear shift pattern . . . . . 171
General overview of the engine compartment 275
Glove compartment . . . . . 137
Glow plug system . . . . . 169
Warning lamp . . . . . 78

# H

Handbrake . . . . . 176
Warning lamp . . . . . 81, 177
Hazard warning lights . . . . . 116
head restraints
Adjusting . . . . . 131, 132
adjustment of the head restraint angle . . . 132
Removing . . . . . 132
head restraints, correct adjustment . . . . . 13
In-use and non-use positions . . . . . 14
Headlight flashers . . . . . 118
Headlight range control . . . . . 115
Headlights
Driving abroad . . . . . 196
Fog lights . . . . . 111
Washer system . . . . . 127
Heated front seats . . . . . 134

Heated window
2C-Climatronic . . . . . 160
Heating . . . . . 153
High pressure cleaners . . . . . 203
Horn . . . . . 55

## I

Identification number . . . . . 272
Ignition key . . . . . 167
Ignition lock . . . . . 167
Indicators
indication lamp . . . . . 78
Information texts in the display . . . . . 64
Instrument and switch lighting . . . . . 115
Instrument lighting . . . . . 55
Instrument panel . . . . . 55
Instrument panel menu
Configuration menu . . . . . 72
Example of menu use . . . . . 66
Lights and visibility menu . . . . . 74
Instrument panel menus
Main menu . . . . . 66
Vehicle status menu . . . . . 71
Instruments . . . . . 57
Interior lights . . . . . 119
Intermittent wipe, windscreen . . . . . 123
ISOFIX system . . . . . 51

## J

Jack position points
Skirting with cover . . . . . 247
Jump leads . . . . . 264
Jump-starting . . . . . 264

## K

Key tab . . . . . 99
Keys . . . . . 99

## L

Leather cleaning . . . . . 208
Lights . . . . . 111
Load compartment in the boot
*See* Luggage compartment . . . . . 17
Locks . . . . . 205
Luggage compartment . . . . . 17
*See also* Luggage compartment . . . . . 17
Luggage compartment cover . . . . . 151
Luggage compartment retaining net . . . . . 141

## M

Main beam . . . . . 111, 118
Main beam headlights
Indicator lamp . . . . . 79
Main headlight lamps . . . . . 256
Maintenance
airbags . . . . . 32
Maintenance and cleaning . . . . . 201
Manual gearbox . . . . . 171
Manual mode
2C-Climatronic . . . . . 162
MEDIA-IN* connector . . . . . 149
MFD . . . . . 62
Mileage display . . . . . 61
Mirrors
Exterior mirrors, electrical . . . . . 128
Interior mirror . . . . . 127
Make-up mirrors . . . . . 122
Mobile telephones . . . . . 211
Multi-function display . . . . . 62
Multi-purpose* mobile stowage compartment 144
Closing . . . . . 144
Fitting . . . . . 143
Opening . . . . . 144
Removal . . . . . 143
Uses . . . . . 144

## N

Number of seats . . . . . 19

## O

Observations . . . . . 196
Octane number . . . . . 213
Oil . . . . . 218

Oil change . . . . . 221
Oil properties . . . . . 219
One-touch opening and closing
Electric windows . . . . . 107
Opening and locking . . . . . 104
Overview
Control lamps . . . . . 75
Instrument panel . . . . . 55
Instruments . . . . . 57
Warning lamps . . . . . 75

## P

Paintwork
Polishing . . . . . 204
Parking . . . . . 177
Parking aid acoustic system . . . . . 178
Parking lights . . . . . 118
Parts . . . . . 210
Parts replacement . . . . . 210
Pedals . . . . . 16
Petrol . . . . . 213
Driving abroad . . . . . 196
Petrol additives . . . . . 214
Petrol engines, starting . . . . . 168
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . . . 21
Plastic key tab . . . . . 99
Plastic parts . . . . . 204
Plastic parts cleaning . . . . . 208
Pollen filter . . . . . 163
Power steering . . . . . 191
Products for vehicle maintenance . . . . . 201

## R

Radio frequency remote control
Changing the battery . . . . . 101
Radio navigation Steering wheel controls
audio + telephone version . . . . . 89
audio version . . . . . 89
Radio wave remote control . . . . . 100
Rain sensor* . . . . . 125
Rear drink holder*
Armrest* . . . . . 142
Rear fog light
Indication lamp . . . . . 111
Warning lamp . . . . . 78
Rear interior lights . . . . . 121
Rear lights . . . . . 259
Rear reading lights . . . . . 121
Rear seat bench . . . . . 135
Rear window heating
Heating element wires . . . . . 205
Rear window wiper . . . . . 126
Rear-view mirror . . . . . 127
Recommended gear display . . . . . 61
Refuelling . . . . . 212
Registration light . . . . . 263
Remote control key
Buttons . . . . . 100
Synchronising . . . . . 101
Removing and fitting the wheel . . . . . 247
Repairs
airbags . . . . . 32
Replacement keys . . . . . 99
Rev counter . . . . . 59
Reverse gear
Manual gearbox . . . . . 171
Roll-back function
Sliding/tilting roof . . . . . 110
Windows . . . . . 107
Roof aerial* . . . . . 211
Roof carrier* . . . . . 152
Roof stowage compartment* . . . . . 139
Rubber seals . . . . . 205
Running in
Engine . . . . . 192

## S

Safe driving . . . . . 7
Safety . . . . . 8
Safety equipment . . . . . 7
Safety instructions
Coolant temperature . . . . . 78
Safety notes
Airbags . . . . . 32
Belt tension devices . . . . . 28
Curtain airbags . . . . . 42
Disabling front passenger airbag . . . . . 45
frontal airbags . . . . . 37
side airbags . . . . . 40

Using child seats . . . . . 47
Using seat belts . . . . . 23
Safety system- safe . . . . . 94
Seals . . . . . 205
Seat adjustment . . . . . 130, 133, 135
Seat belt position
Pregnant women . . . . . 26
Seat belts . . . . . 25
Seat belt release . . . . . 27
Seat belt warning lamp . . . . . 19
Seat belts . . . . . 19
adjustment . . . . . 24
Incorrectly fastened . . . . . 28
Not worn . . . . . 22
Safety notes . . . . . 23
Warning lamp . . . . . 19
Seat belts cleaning . . . . . 209
Seat belts protection . . . . . 23
Seat heating . . . . . 134
Seats . . . . . 19
Selective opening* . . . . . 94
Selector lever locking . . . . . 173
Selector lever positions . . . . . 172
Self directional headlights . . . . . 115
Service interval display . . . . . 61
servotronic . . . . . 191
Shoes . . . . . 16
Side airbags . . . . . 37
Description . . . . . 37
Function . . . . . 39
Safety notes . . . . . 40
Side lights . . . . . 111
Sitting position
Driver . . . . . 10
Front passenger . . . . . 11
Incorrect sitting position . . . . . 15
Passengers . . . . . 12
Sitting position, occupants . . . . . 10
Sliding/tilting roof . . . . . 108
Snow chains . . . . . 239
Soot accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter
Indicator . . . . . 79
Spare wheel* . . . . . 241
Starting on an uphill . . . . . 178
Starting Petrol engines . . . . . 169
Starting the engine . . . . . 168, 169
After the fuel tank has been run dry . . . . . 169
Steam jets . . . . . 203
Steering . . . . . 165
Steering lock . . . . . 167
Steering wheel audio controls
audio + telephone version . . . . . 85
audio version . . . . . 85
Steering wheel height adjustment . . . . . 165
Stowage area
Centre arm rest . . . . . 137
Front seats . . . . . 138
Other stowage areas . . . . . 141
Stowage compartment
Front passenger side . . . . . 137
Stowage in the luggage compartment . . . . . 140
Sun visor . . . . . 122
Sun visors . . . . . 122
Sunroof . . . . . 108
Sunroof blind
Sliding/tilting roof . . . . . 109
Switch
Hazard warning lights . . . . . 116
Switches
Electric windows . . . . . 106
Electrical exterior mirrors . . . . . 128
Sliding/tilting roof . . . . . 108
Switching off the engine . . . . . 170


## T


Tailgate . . . . . 104
Emergency opening . . . . . 105
Warning lamp . . . . . 82
Tank
fuel level . . . . . 58
reserve indicator . . . . . 58
tank capacity . . . . . 58
TCS . . . . . 186

TCS (Traction control system)
Warning lamp . . . . . 84
Technical modifications . . . . . 210
The danger of not using the seat belt . . . . . 22
Tools . . . . . 240
Towing . . . . . 267
Towing a trailer . . . . . 274
Towing bracket . . . . . 198
Towing bracket, fitting . . . . . 199
Towing eye . . . . . 267
Tow-starting . . . . . 267
Traction control system
warning lamp . . . . . 84
Trailer
Trailer towing . . . . . 197
Trailer eyes . . . . . 269
Trailer turn signals
Warning lamp . . . . . 118
Trailer weights . . . . . 274
Trips, checklist . . . . . 8
Turn signals . . . . . 118
Warning lamp . . . . . 78, 118
Turning light . . . . . 116
Type plate . . . . . 272
Tyre Mobility-System (Tyre repair kit) . . . . . 241
Tyre monitor indicator . . . . . 80
Tyre pressure . . . . . 232
Loss . . . . . 234
Tyre pressure monitoring . . . . . 233
Tyre repair kit . . . . . 241, 249
Tyre-Mobility-System (Tyre repair kit) . . . . . 249
Tyres and wheels
Dimensions . . . . . 237
Tyres service life . . . . . 234
Tyres tread depth . . . . . 235
Tyres with directional tread pattern . . . . . 232

## U

Underbody maintenance . . . . . 207
Unlocking and locking
Personalisation . . . . . 96
Using the Tiptronic gear system . . . . . 175

## V

Vehicle battery . . . . . 229
Vehicle data . . . . . 272
Vehicle identification data . . . . . 272
Vehicle identification number . . . . . 272
Vehicle Maintenance
Exterior . . . . . 202
Vehicle modifications . . . . . 210
Vehicle paintwork
Products for vehicle maintenance . . . . . 201
Waxing . . . . . 203
Vehicle tools
Storage . . . . . 240
Vehicle wallet storage . . . . . 137
Vehicle washing . . . . . 202
Ventilation slits . . . . . 18
Volumetric sensor*
Activation . . . . . 102
Deactivation . . . . . 102

## W

Warning lamp . . . . . 31
Warning lamps . . . . . 75
Warning reports
Red . . . . . 65
Yellow . . . . . 65
Warning texts in the display . . . . . 64
Warning triangle and first-aid kit . . . . . 149
Washer fluid . . . . . 224
Washing by hand . . . . . 202
Washing with high pressure cleaners . . . . . 203
Water
warning . . . . . 65
Water in the windscreen washer tank . . . . . 224
Wear indicators . . . . . 235
Wheel bolts . . . . . 244
Torque . . . . . 238
Wheel change . . . . . 242
Wheel trims . . . . . 243
Wheels . . . . . 232
Why assume the correct sitting position? . . . . . 30
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 13
Why wear seat belts? . . . . . 21, 30
Why wear seatbelts? . . . . . 19

Windows . . . . . 106
Windscreen washer fluid
Warning lamp . . . . . 80
Windscreen wiper blades
Cleaning . . . . . 205
Windscreen wipers . . . . . 123
Changing blades . . . . . 225
Changing the rear blade . . . . . 227
Winter driving
Diesel engine . . . . . 215
Winter tyres . . . . . 238
Wiper/wash automatic function . . . . . 123
Wooden trim cleaning . . . . . 208
Working in the engine compartment . . . . . 215

5P8012003BQ

Inglés 5P8012003BQ (11.08) (GT9)

SEAT